Oxford Grammar for EAP

English grammar and practice for Academic Purposes

with answers
OXFORD GRAMMAR FOR EAP (English for Academic Purposes) is a study and practice book for international students planning to take or already taking a university course in the medium of English. Focusing on the key grammar of academic English, the book provides clear explanation, appropriate examples and plenty of practice material. It will be of great use to those students who need extra English language support for their studies.

English for Academic Purposes is the kind of English that is required at college or university. Unlike the study of everyday conversational English, the study of academic language concentrates on the more formal language that is generally used in written academic contexts. However, because discussion in seminars and giving presentations are also important elements of academic study, examples of language that is particularly useful in these situations is indicated by this symbol.

Example sentences, texts and exercises in Oxford Grammar for EAP are taken from a wide range of subject areas including business, science, creative arts, social studies and law.

Oxford Grammar for EAP is designed for self-study, and has a full answer key, but is also suitable for use in classroom situations.

The structure of the book
The book has 20 units, each one dealing with a different area of grammar. You can work your way through the book from beginning to end, or go straight to units which you see as a priority.

Some units, such as 01 Tense review or 11 Modal verbs, focus on aspects of grammar that are relevant to any academic situation; others, such as 02 Comparing and contrasting, concentrate on language that is useful for particular strategies or tasks.

How the units work
Each unit starts with a simple activity to get you thinking about the main idea. In 04 Being formal and informal, for example, there are two texts and you are asked to try to identify the kind of language that makes their styles different.

The rest of the unit is divided into short, easy-to-read sections with a test yourself practice exercise at the end of each one, so you can check your understanding immediately. Explanation and example sentences are accompanied by Tips: key pieces of extra advice on the topic in question.

At the end of every unit, there is a Challenge yourself section with a wide variety of longer exercises, giving you the opportunity to test yourself thoroughly on all the grammar points covered. Challenge yourself sections normally finish with a short writing task for which there is a model answer in the key.

For the Challenge yourself sections there is a reference next to each answer in the key that allows you to check any wrong answers against the appropriate section of the unit.

Appendices
At the end of Oxford Grammar for EAP you will find a brief guide to punctuation, a glossary of the grammatical terms used in the book, and the full Academic Word List, as well as the answer key and a full index.

Academic Word List
Developed by Dr Averil Coxhead at Victoria University of Wellington in New Zealand, the Academic Word List (AWL) contains a range of the most frequently-used words in academic English. Where these words occur in the Challenge yourself sections, definitions are often given alongside the exercises to help you extend your understanding of academic vocabulary efficiently and in context. The definitions are adapted from Oxford Advanced Learner’s Dictionary, 8th edition © Oxford University Press.
Introduction

This unit provides an overview of English tenses, focusing on their use in academic English, and on the areas that can sometimes cause difficulties.

1 Choosing between simple and continuous forms.
   • Painters see things that the untrained eye might easily miss. (present simple)
   • Many countries, both rich and poor, are already seeing the effects of an ageing population. (present continuous)

2 When to use the present perfect.
   • In recent months vegetable oils have seen volatility in the spot price more reminiscent of petroleum.

3 When to use the past perfect.
   • The conservation of endangered species is safeguarded by the world’s best zoos, whose scientists and staff have successfully reintroduced species to areas where they had died out.

4 The various future forms.
   • Harrison argues that more countries will be entering the European Union over the next ten years and, as they do, greater tensions will arise between the richest and the poorest.

Read the text and then try to name the verb tenses used. Can you say why each tense is used?

For centuries, people on sea coasts around the world have hunted whales. From the mid-nineteenth century onwards, with the advent of modern factory ships, the annual worldwide catch increased until it reached a peak in the 1960s. A rapid decline followed, however, because the plastics industry had invented substitutes for most of the products of the whale’s carcass. The whale-hunting that takes place today is mostly done for food.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7

Suggested answers: see page 189

Unit contents

1 Present simple and continuous page 007
2 Past simple and continuous page 008
3 Present perfect (and past simple) page 008
4 Past perfect (and past simple) page 010
5 Future page 010

Other units that deal with tenses are unit 9 Passives, unit 11 Modal verbs, and unit 17 Conditionals.
Present simple and continuous

1.1 In academic writing and speaking, the primary use of the present simple is for factual descriptions.

- Almost a billion people are speaking Mandarin, the official language of the People's Republic of China.
- When you heat a substance, its particles move faster, and so collide more frequently.

This includes:

1. describing regular activities
   - 49,000 people are entering the underground station at Waterloo every day during the three-hour morning peak.

2. describing processes (often in the passive in academic English) or giving instructions (in the active)
   - The fabric is then washed, dyed, and cut into patterns.
   - Then you wash the fabric, dye it, and cut it into patterns.

3. summarizing or reporting the main arguments of other academics.
   - Steele explains that survivors of tragic events often undergo periods of guilt.

4. talking about the plots of books, films, etc.
   - Brooklyn by Colm Tóibín tells the story of Ellis Lacey, a young woman who is sent by her family from Ireland to the USA to get a good job.

The present continuous is used to describe events or actions that are happening at the moment (now or around now). These might be continuous events/actions or a series of regular events/actions.

- Kayston plc is advertising for a new CEO after Hugh Alexander's sudden departure.
- Chinese construction companies are securing a number of major contracts to rebuild Ethiopia's infrastructure.

They include temporary situations and trends in society or the world around us.

- Kingston Enterprises, which is currently operating from premises in Wandsworth while its new factory outside Cambridge is being completed, is one of the UK's leading manufacturers of computer hard drives.
- More people are shopping online these days, and the service standards that consumers expect are rising.

Test yourself

Circle the correct option.

1. Boston College looks for/is looking for an international marketing manager for their overseas recruitment drive.
2. Social enterprises can be defined as those which are placing/place environmental concerns alongside profit.
3. Monetary policy is operating/operates by influencing the price at which money is lent.
4. Smartphones are establishing/establish themselves as the dominant mobile device amongst younger consumers.
5. David Hare's plays, as Felton (2009) notes/is noting, provide actresses with some of the strongest roles in modern drama.
6. According to the Broadcasters' Audience Research Board, the average Briton watches/is watching just over thirty hours of television per week.
7. Most people are recognizing/recognize that a respect for the law is the fundamental basis for a civilized society.
8. When a team works/is working intensively on a project, the team leader should protect them from distraction.
9. Stevens argues that consumers these days are preferring/prefer to do business with companies that have environmentally-friendly policies.
10. Babcock suggests that attitudes to work amongst young people are changing/change.
1.2 Past simple and continuous

1.2 study

The past simple is used, often with dates, times or places, for finished events, whether they are long, short, or repeated.

- The Mughal Empire was controlling a large part of India for more than 300 years.
- Boo.com was launched in the autumn of 1999 as an online clothing retailer. The company then spent $35 million of venture capital in just eight months, but went into receivership on 18 May 2000, one of the most spectacular failures of the ‘dotcom’ era.
- During the summer of 2010, Theatrespace was putting on a new show every week for twelve weeks.

In the second example above, three separate events occurred, one after another, so the past simple was used. But if events overlap or ‘interrupt’ one another, the past continuous is used for the longer, ‘background’ event.

- Brooks Brothers of New York was performing reasonably well when the takeover bid came from Marks and Spencers.
- At the time of his death, Einstein was still working on his attempt to unify the laws of physics.

Note, however, that state verbs (see tip on page 007) are not normally used in the continuous form.

As an alternative to the past simple, you can use used to and would + infinitive without to to refer to habitual actions and events in the past.

- Before the Clean Air Act of 1956, London used to/ would suffer from severe air pollution known as ‘smog’, a combination of smoke and fog.
- Portland Zinc used to mine most of its supplies in Brazil. It shipped/ would ship the ore from São Paulo to processing plants further up the coast.

Note that in the second example above, you could replace used to by saying something like Portland Zinc mined most of its supplies in Brazil in the 1950s, or Portland Zinc once mined most of its supplies in Brazil, but you cannot use would until a past context has been established.

Note also that would is not normally used with state verbs, and that used to is not used with numbers of months, years, etc.

- Pampas Products would used to own a subsidiary in Florida, but it was obliged to sell it to recoup its losses during the recession of the early 1980s.
- The company’s headquarters used to be located in Berlin for eight years.

1.2 test yourself

Circle the correct option. If both are possible, circle both.

1. At the moment when the earthquake was striking/struck, most people were sleeping/slept.
2. Phillips asked/was asking her subjects to watch clips of people smiling, and measured their heart rate afterwards.
3. During the 18th century, merchants would/used to transport their goods around England by canal.
4. Audi used to launch/launched its new family saloon in 2010.
5. At the time of the crash, high street banks were investing/invested in some very risky products.
6. The yacht White Tiger made/was making excellent progress when an unusually high wave destroyed/was destroying its mast.

1.3 Present perfect (and past simple)

1.3 study

The present perfect is the tense that connects the past and the present. In the example below, the present perfect is used to describe ‘the very recent past up until the present’ – with the focus on the present.

- In acquiring Duogame, Gamesmaster plc has become a major player in the UK computer games market.

If the past simple was used, the focus would be on ‘when’ (i.e. a finished moment in the past), and we might include a date.

- In acquiring Duogame, Gamesmaster plc last week became a major player in the UK computer games market.

The present perfect is the tense to use to describe people or things as they are now (present focus) in terms of their experience in the past.

- The province of Alsace has changed hands several times in its history, which explains its cultural heritage.

Compare the example above with a sentence beginning Alsace changed hands in 1848 and 1872, ... which focuses less on the present nature of Alsace and more on specific events in its history.
You can use the present perfect and the past simple to present different aspects of the same subject.

- In 2005, scientists measured a land temperature of 70.7°C in the Lut Desert of Iran. (past focus)
  → No higher temperature has been recorded on earth since then. (present focus)
  → This is the only time scientists have recorded a temperature above 70°C. (present focus)

Note how just is used with the present perfect to emphasize that an action is recent.

- A team of Russian scientists has just completed a five-year study of the behavioural patterns of three Siberian wolf packs.

In academic writing, the present perfect is useful for referring to earlier studies or to generally accepted theories in expressions such as: Studies have shown that ..., It has become accepted that ..., Mathematicians have proved that ...

(See page 127 in unit 14 Hedging for more ways of referring to the work of others.)

You can also use the present perfect to summarize the arguments you have made up to that point in an essay or presentation.

- The first part of this report has outlined the way in which one-way road systems can be beneficial in reducing traffic congestion in town centres. Now, some of the disadvantages will be considered.

The present perfect continuous is used to highlight the length of an activity (often with for, since, so far, up until now, all year, etc.).

- General Motors has been designing its new family saloon for the past six months.
- (in a presentation) The problems that I’ve been looking at so far can all be resolved by an increase in the general level of funding.

You can also emphasize the effects that the activity has had on the present situation.

- Neither company has much cash left because both have been investing heavily all year in a new plant.

Note again that state verbs are rarely used with the continuous form.

As a general rule, contracted forms such as I’ve been looking at ... are normally avoided in written academic English, but may be used in presentations, seminars, etc. (See unit 4 Being formal and informal for more information on what is acceptable in a formal context.)

1.3 test yourself

Complete each sentence with the present perfect or past simple form of the verb in brackets.

1 New research indicates that scientists ______________________ (discover) a potential cure for some forms of dementia. The key finding ______________________ (make) two months ago by a team working for Dr Julia Davidson.

2 Construction companies ______________________ (build) a new village outside Perpignan for the past three years.

3 Thousands of UK citizens ______________________ (emigrate) to Australia to start a new life in the 1950s and 60s. One of them ______________________ (write) an account in 1976 that ______________________ (just/film).

4 Currently editor of The Weekly Business Digest, Wendy Crozier ______________________ (have) an interesting career. It ______________________ (start) in 1976 at the BBC.

5 Research ______________________ (demonstrate) that people can delay the onset of Type 2 diabetes by losing weight.

6 A million Chinese people ______________________ (move) to Africa in the past twenty years to take advantage of new business opportunities. More than 250,000 Chinese immigrants ______________________ (arrive) in South Africa alone since 1994.
1.4 Past perfect (and past simple)

1.4 study

The past perfect is used to talk about a past event which happened before another past event.

- Trade union representatives returned (past) to the talks on Friday 17 May, but by this time the management team withdrew had already withdrawn (earlier past) their offer.
- G & M Business Machines lost a significant percentage of its market share between 2004 and 2010 because it had failed to anticipate the growth in Chinese demand.

The past perfect is commonly used:

1 after past simple forms of verbs connected with speaking or thinking such as admit, agree, believe, claim, confirm, deny, know and realize
- A number of MPs claimed that Tony Blair had misled Parliament during the debates over the Iraq war.
- Most observers agreed that the merger had taken place too quickly.
- Professor Bernard knew immediately that her team had made a significant discovery.

2 in relative clauses
- The report concluded that no side effects were apparent in the patients who had received low doses of the new medicine.

2 in third conditional sentences
- If the company's accountants had submitted the tax return by the due date, GM Holidays would not have been fined.

4 in past situations where plans did not succeed.
- Researchers had hoped to complete their study by 2010, but found that they did not have sufficient data.
- The chairman of the enquiry had wanted to question General Armstrong, but the General's legal team refused to cooperate.

The past perfect continuous is used in the same way as the present perfect continuous - to highlight the length and effects of an activity.
- The haulage company was prosecuted when health and safety inspectors were able to prove that some of its employees had been driving for up to twenty hours without taking a break.

1.4 test yourself

Correct each sentence by adding had.

1 The team of scientists just left the laboratory when the fire broke out, so there were no injuries.
2 James Lott described the trip as a failure as they expected to discover at least three new species of insect.
3 The regiment made a successful case for all those who participated in the rescue voyage to receive the Distinguished Service Cross.
4 Petroleum Products finally admitted that crude oil had been leaking from its tanker for more than a week.
5 Many companies signed contracts with competitors by the time Holliwell Carlease offered them the new Fiat.
6 The government denied that they announced the new proposals before they were ready.

1.5 Future

1.5 study

There are a number of ways of talking about the future using the following words and structures: will, be going to, and present tenses; the future continuous and perfect tenses; be (due) to, be about to, etc., and the ‘future in the past’.

1 Will, be going to and present tenses

Will and be going to can often be used interchangeably with no change in meaning. Will, however, is much more commonly used in written academic English than be going to.
- The President will/is going to spend two days in Moscow, before travelling on to Oslo.

Be going to is more natural when announcing a plan in spoken English, or when describing the announcement of a new initiative in written English.
- May I start my presentation? Thank you. I will I'm going to talk about water conservation today.
- A group of private universities in Germany is going to introduce a fast-track medical degree course next year.

In the above examples, you could replace be going to with the present simple or present continuous form of a verb such as intend to or plan to (A group of private universities in Germany intends/is intending to introduce ...).
The present continuous may be used as an alternative to will for fixed arrangements, and the present simple can be used for schedules.

- The UK is hosting/will host a summit in December to discuss the international response to global warming.
- The theatre company begins/will begin its tour in Chicago in May.

Will is normally used after verbs that express uncertainty about the future such as doubt, expect, hope, and think.

- Some critics expect that the new scheme will fail quite quickly through lack of public support.

2 Future continuous and perfect tenses

You can use the future continuous (will + be + -ing form) as an alternative to will + infinitive without to to emphasize what will be happening at a specific time in the future.

- Two British astronauts will join/will be joining the Russian team at the space station in October.

When you describe a future activity that will already be in progress at a specific time in the future, however, you must use the continuous form.

- By this time next year, it is possible that Bailey and Sharp will export will be exporting more of its tractors to China than to EU countries.

The future perfect (will + have + past participle) and future perfect continuous (will + have been + -ing form) are used to say that something will happen or be achieved before a specific time in the future.

- Many commentators believe that six or seven of the smaller American merchant banks will have gone into receivership by this time next year.
- In a year’s time, Railton plc will have been operating in China for a quarter of a century.

3 Be (due) to, be about to, be (un)likely/certain to

The present tense of the verb be + to + infinitive is used as an alternative to will to express formal decisions, plans and requirements. Be due to is used in a similar way.

- The UK and Argentina are to/are due to sign a new trade agreement in January next year.

You can use be about to + infinitive to describe something that will happen in the immediate future. Be on the point of + -ing form is used in a similar way.

- Scientists are about to test the prototype of a scheme to cool parts of the atmosphere. (= Scientists are on the point of testing …)

Be (un)likely to or certain to + infinitive are normally used to express probability.

- The government is unlikely to announce new reforms to the House of Lords until after the next election.

In discussing the history of an event, you may want to use ‘future in the past’ with past forms of be to (was/were to), be about to (was/were about to), will (would), and be going to (was/were going to).

- President Obama was to attend the opening event, but a security alert changed the situation.
- Keirston plc was about to go bankrupt when a new order from Japan came through.
- The CEO of Specter Products realized in 2007 that the economic situation would get worse.

Was/Were to can also be used with be or prove to emphasize the importance of a past event or action on future consequences.

- The opening of a series of branches in the USA was to prove/was to be an expensive mistake for the UK retailer, Bourke and Mason.

1.5 test yourself

Circle the correct option. If both are possible, circle both.

1 Tesco doubles/is going to double the number of its hypermarkets in China by 2020.
2 Government cuts mean that life will be/will have been difficult for many people over the next three years.
3 The establishment of an office in New York in 2009 was to prove/would prove to be a very successful move for the UK TV company.
4 If everything goes to plan, at 14.16 this afternoon, a minute after starting his engine, Andy Green will be driving/will drive faster than anyone has driven before.
5 Some economists argue that India is to/will outperform China in the long-term.
6 The new law on the advertising of cigarettes will take/takes effect in April next year.
7 All of the parties would/were about to come to an agreement when news broke of a new rebel attack.
8 A major new aerospace factory is opening/will open in Sunderland in February.
A Complete the text with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

The business of tourism 1. ___________ (grow) massively over the past century. While extensive foreign travel has always been one of the pleasures of the wealthy, its extension to the mass market 2. __________ (be) a phenomenon of the last fifty years. Domestic tourism really 3. __________ (begin) in the mid-nineteenth century, as workers 4. __________ (gain) paid annual leave, at first for one week and then for two. Longer periods gradually 5. __________ (become) common, in some cases granted by benevolent employers such as Cadbury’s, but more often 6. __________ (fight) for and 7. __________ (win) by the trade unions. This was made possible as a result of the concentration of the labour force in factories during the Industrial Revolution of the nineteenth century, which 8. __________ (change) the balance of power between employers and employees.

B Match the beginning of each sentence with the correct ending.

1 At the beginning of mass tourism, the whole workforce of a factory would
2 This model of tourism was
3 Workers from the polluted industrial cities of Russia used to
4 For example, they might be told to
5 As much as possible, people wanted to

a travel en masse to the pristine shores of the lakes of the Central Asian republics, where doctors examined them on arrival and prescribed specific food, drink, exercise, and activities for the month.
b spend their vacation building up their strength, socializing with colleagues, and relaxing with their families.
c move to the seaside, a resort town, or a spa, to spend their holiday together with their workmates and immediate family.
d amplified in the Soviet Union.
e walk in the pine forests for an hour a day.
C Circle the correct option (a–d] to complete the sentences from a short text about air travel.

1. The development of larger planes in the 1950s and 60s __ down the cost of air travel.
   a brings b brought c had brought d is bringing

2. This led to the business of tourism that we __ today.
   a are seeing b have seen c see d saw

3. The relatively prosperous citizens of northern Europe __ their holidays within their own country:
   a used to take b take c were taking d took

4. Now they __ to coastal resorts in Greece and Spain.
   a are flying b were able to fly c had flown d had been flying

5. These sunny holiday destinations __ popular for decades.
   a are b are being c used to be d had been

6. Previously, however, they ___ a long journey by road or boat, taking several days in each direction.
   a had required b were required c were requiring d require

7. This was not possible for someone with only a couple of weeks' vacation allowance. With the advent of cheaper air travel, foreign destinations __ accessible in a way they had never been before.
   a become b became c are becoming d did become

D Complete this paragraph about shopping, using the correct form of one of the verbs in the box. You will have to use the passive for one verb.

be contribute need pose serve take

The changing retail landscape ___ a challenge for both business leaders and city planners. Town centres __ as the commercial centre of their communities. This is no longer entirely the case, and there are two main reasons. The first ___ the rise of the so-called superstores or big-box stores, usually grouped in retail parks on the outskirts of cities, well provided with parking but poorly served by public transport. The second is the rise of internet shopping. This can ___ the form of giant web retailers such as Amazon and eBay, or the online presence of long-standing retail chains, or the digitization of content such that no physical product __, and hence no physical shop either. Both these long-term trends, to big out-of-town stores, and to internet shopping, ___ to the decline of the town centre.
Correct the mistakes in the verb forms. There is one mistake in each numbered section.

1. ‘There are fewer wheelbarrows waiting to be invented.’ This contention appears in a millennial essay on ‘The road to riches’, which was seeking to develop an explanation for the astonishing rise in living standards in the West over the past couple of centuries.

2. Why did The Economist’s anonymous writers choose the wheelbarrow as their exemplar of progress? Because it had transformed construction.

3. The pyramids of Egypt are built without them; nineteenth-century skyscrapers could not have been.

4. A corollary of this argument will be that the pace of technological innovation is bound to slow down, instead of, as was previously assumed, endlessly increasing.

5. Scientific discoveries are likely to continue indefinitely, subject to funding. If blue-sky research is curtailed in one area, for example genetics in the United States, it is going to be certain to migrate to another.

6. Technology, on the other hand, encounters, or is about to encounter, a ceiling, according to this argument.

7. The practical, tangible innovations that have lifted much of humanity from poverty to affluence, from subsistence agriculture through the Industrial Revolution to, in many countries, service-based economies - these innovations were already invented.

8. There will be no more significant, radical new inventions that transform an industry. Instead, gradual and incremental improvements would be the path of the future.

9. The counter-arguments to this are twofold. Firstly, it can be argued that we were not capable of knowing what has not yet been invented.

10. Before the wheelbarrow exists, no one felt the need for one. There may be plenty more such devices waiting in the wings. There is no shortage of intelligent, ingenious people eager to make their mark as inventors.

11. The second argument is pointing to entirely new areas of human activity, for example in personalized medicine and in human-machines interaction.

12. The future may see scientists inventing things we cannot yet imagine. Instead of wheelbarrows – sturdy objects that anyone can use and understand – our future inventors may have been working at a microscopic, or indeed molecular, level.
F Complete the text with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

The inter-relationship between diabetes and obesity 1.___________ (be) for some time a matter of interest to researchers and clinicians. The case of the Pima Indians is one that continues 2.___________ (be) much studied. They are a group of Native Americans who 3.___________ (live) for thousands of years in what is now the southwestern United States and northern Mexico. Their traditional economy was based for the most part on subsistence agriculture, and they 4.___________ (endure) periods of famine as well as plenty. In the twentieth century, the way of life 5.___________ (change) dramatically in the former country, but not so much in the isolated rural areas of the latter. By 2000, the American Pima 6.___________ (become) obese, and 7.___________ (develop) one of the highest rates of diabetes in the world. However, their Mexican cousins do not suffer these problems to nearly the same extent.

G Circle the correct option.

The situation is as close to a scientific experiment as it 8.___________ (is/will be) possible to find in the field, that is, without direct and deliberate intervention. The American and the Mexican Pima 9.___________ (share/are sharing) essentially the same genotype, and until a few generations ago they also 10.___________ (shared/were sharing) the same phenotype. In other words, although they 11.___________ (have/ would have) very similar genetic make-up, the two groups, which once had the same body shape, now 12.___________ (will look/look) different and 13.___________ (will suffer/suffer) different health problems. This genotype-phenotype distinction is a fundamental one for any study of genetics.

Neel (1962) proposed that the predisposition towards diabetes 14.___________ (will be caused/is caused) by what he called a ‘thrifty gene’, one that 15.___________ (has enabled/enables) the body to store fat when food is plentiful, in preparation for the famine that 16.___________ (will lie/lie) around the corner. This theory has undergone modification in the past half-century. Barker’s hypothesis (1997) posits a ‘thrifty phenotype’: if a pregnant woman is starved of nutrients, her baby 17.___________ (is/will be) born small, and is likely to develop certain diseases later in life. The growing foetus is prepared for a life in which famine 18.___________ (is/is going to be) likely. In reality, of course, famine 19.___________ (has been/is) increasingly unlikely for most citizens in most countries today. We suffer from the opposite problem, overnutrition. Our biology, which 20.___________ (had evolved/evolves) in slow tiny steps, has not kept pace with the rapid changes in the way we live, and one consequence 21.___________ (had been/is) the epidemic of diseases of affluence, notably obesity and diabetes.

H Write 100–200 words about the past, present, and future of the place you come from [village, city, or country].
Comparing and contrasting

Introduction

Home cooking in the UK, despite the fact that there are more cookery programmes on television than ever before, is in a long slow decline. While the freshest items in the supermarket remain on the shelves, sales of prepared meals are booming. Without doubt, it is not as easy to cook from a recipe as it is to place a cook-chill meal in the microwave, but is this the only reason why the ready-to-cook section of the supermarket is becoming its single biggest area? In this essay, I will explore the cultural values of two countries where, unlike the UK, home cooking seems to have retained its appeal, and try to understand firstly what they have in common, and secondly, how they differ from the UK.

Suggested answers: see page 190

Identify the key words in the text that enable the writer to make comparisons. Then make notes in two columns showing what ideas or things are actually being compared.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cookery programmes on TV now</th>
<th>cookery programmes on TV before</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Sometimes the only way to show that you really understand something is to compare it with something else. This is why ‘compare and contrast’ essays are so popular with tutors and examiners.

- **How does the 1978 remake of the Invasion of the Body Snatchers differ in its directorial style from the original 1956 film?**
- **Compare the psychological impulses that underpin anorexia nervosa and bulimia.**
- **Contrast, with examples, the situations that produce bear and bull markets.**

In answering this type of essay question you will need to express similarity and difference in a variety of ways, using the following.

1. Adjectives and adverbs, particularly structures with (not) as ... as, too, enough, and in the comparative and superlative forms.
- **Adolescents may think that other people will like them better if they are thinner.**

2. Modifiers with adjectives and adverbs.
- **Stock prices need to be at least 20% lower for a period of two months for a bear market to be declared.**

3. Words and phrases for expressing similarity and contrast, such as like, similarly, unlike and in contrast to.
- **Kaufman’s camera in the later film seems to prowl the streets like an animal seeking its prey.**

Unit contents

1. Comparative and superlative adjectives and adverbs page 017
2. Comparisons with adjectives and adverbs page 017
3. Comparisons with comparative adjectives and adverbs page 018
4. Comparisons with superlative adjectives and adverbs page 019
5. Modifying adjectives and adverbs page 020
6. Words and phrases for expressing similarity page 021
7. Words and phrases for expressing contrast page 022
Comparative and superlative adjectives and adverbs

2.1 study

Here is a brief reminder of how comparative and superlative forms are made.

One-syllable adjectives and adverbs, and two-syllable adjectives ending in -ow, -le and -er normally add -er to form the comparative and -est to form the superlative.

adjectives:
- high → higher → highest
- narrow → narrower → narrowest
- gentle → gentler → gentlest
- clever → cleverer → cleverest

adverbs:
- soon → sooner → soonest
- fast → faster → fastest
- hard → harder → hardest

Two-syllable adverbs and adjectives ending in -ing, -ful, -ed, and -less, and longer adverbs and adjectives normally use more/most or less/least:

adjectives:
- boring → more/less boring → most/least boring
- careful → more/less careful → most/least careful
- talented → more/less talented → most/least talented
- ruthless → more/less ruthless → most/least ruthless
- spectacular → more/less spectacular → most/least spectacular

adverbs:
- regularly → more/less regularly → most/least regularly
- seriously → more seriously → most seriously
- reliably → more reliably → most reliably

But remember the following.

1. Adjectives ending with a single vowel + single consonant double the consonant and a final y becomes i.

- big → bigger → biggest
- thin → thinner → thinnest
- noisy → noisier → noisiest
- happy → happier → happiest

2. There are some exceptions (irregular forms).

- good (adj.)/well (adv.) → better → best
- bad (adj.)/badly (adv.) → worse → worst
- far → further → furthest (farther/farthest is possible but less common)

3. Some adjectives use -er or more/most (both are correct).

- common → commoner/more common → commonest/most common

4. Some adjectives and adverbs such as early, hard and late share the same forms.

2.1 test yourself

A Write the comparative and superlative forms. Use more/most where necessary.

1. hot ________________________
2. complex ________________________
3. far ________________________
4. helpful ________________________
5. simple ________________________
6. optimistic ________________________
7. lucky ________________________

B Now do the same for these adverbs.

1. late ________________________
2. badly ________________________
3. realistically ________________________
4. well ________________________

2.2 Comparisons with adjectives and adverbs

2.2 study

The following structures use adjectives and adverbs in their basic form (not in the comparative or superlative form).

1. As + adjective/adverb + as

- The World Health Organization has suggested that sunbeds can be as lethal as cigarette smoking.
- Some researchers have argued that biodiesel does not work as efficiently as regular diesel.

A structure that places an adjective + a/an + noun between as and as is also possible.

- It was not as effective a law as the government had hoped. (= The law was not as effective as the government had hoped.)
- Alexander argues that Churchill was not always as optimistic a leader as he has been portrayed.
2 Too + adjective (+ for someone) + infinitive with to
- The conditions of the contract proved too difficult to fulfil.
- Stevens argues that it is too simplistic for critics to state that modernism in art was a reaction to realism.

3 Adjective + enough (+ for someone) + infinitive with to
- The proposed changes to the layout of the factory were easy enough (for the owners) to implement without causing any significant delays in production.

2.2 test yourself
Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets.
1 The water in Tank A is cloudier than the water in Tank B. (not as)
2 Howton argues that basic products are often cheaper in big cities than in towns. (not as)
3 Changes in microclimates frequently occur so quickly that one cannot predict them. (too)
4 Excel plc did not return a profit last year because it exported so few of its helicopters. (enough)
5 French and English are equally difficult to learn. (as)
6 Some of the roads in this region are very dangerous, and you must not travel on them. (too)
7 The formula was not as complex as most mathematicians had expected. (It was not ...)
8 Campbell’s Bluebird was so fast it broke the water speed record several times. (enough)

2.3 Comparisons with comparative adjectives and adverbs

2.3 study
The following structures use comparative adjectives and adverbs.

1 Comparative adjective/adverb + than
Note, in the examples below, that the verb phrases in brackets are often left out because they are ‘understood’, and it helps to keep the sentences short.
- Manufacturing productivity is lower in the UK than (it is) in France and Germany.
- Benson International is failing because it markets its products less successfully than its competitors (do).
- Researchers were looking for figures on homelessness that were more precise than the current estimates (are).

TIP It is often possible to present the same information using either a comparative adjective/adverb + than, or not as + adjective/adverb + as.
- Employment figures are higher in Spain than (they are) in Portugal. = Employment figures are not as high in Portugal as (they are) in Spain.

2 ‘Double’ comparatives
You can use -er and -er, more and more or less and less to intensity adjectives and adverbs.
- Joseph points out how motorists under stress tend to drive faster and faster.
- In the last ten years the market in mobile phones has become more and more competitive.

3 The + comparative ..., the + comparative
This pattern, in which the more or the less are sometimes used on their own, can be used to show how situations, patterns of behaviour, etc. may be linked to each other.
- The longer (that) a company has traded, the more the public tends to trust it.
- It may not always be true that the harder athletes train, the better they perform.
- The riskier an investment, the less suitable it is for the first-time buyer of stocks or shares.

TIP You can compare something with people’s expectations or with the past.
- Professor Foster concluded that the tests were not as rigorous as they could have been.
- The task of selecting a new CEO proved to be more time-consuming than the board had thought.
- Skincare products for men are selling much faster than before, as the male population responds to the use of role models in advertising.
2.3 test yourself

Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets.

1 Critics have complained that school exams are not as difficult as they used to be. (than)
2 As an institution gets closer to a financial crisis, it feels the pain more. (the more)
3 Campaigners hoping for change within the country have become increasingly pessimistic. (and more)
4 The Swiss wind turbines have not worked as efficiently as the Italian ones. (The Swiss ... than)
5 The particles become easier to observe when they gain weight. (The heavier ...)
6 Introverts do not absorb information as quickly as extroverts, according to research. (Introverts ... than)

2.4 Comparisons with superlative adjectives and adverbs

2.4 study

The + superlative adjective/adverb is used to rank things, people, or places in a group of three or more.

- The turnout for the referendum on the euro was the lowest ever recorded. (= the lowest of all turnouts)

A possessive noun/pronoun sometimes replaces the.

- Eurobank’s dynamic new CEO, Carol Midgely, is its strongest asset.

The can be left out before a superlative adverb or when a superlative adjective comes after the noun it refers to.

- Midgely will now focus on the sectors of the company where it is growing (the) least quickly.
- Which department is (the) most productive?

When present and past participles act as adjectives, they can follow superlatives.

- The earliest recorded evidence of an earthquake was traced back to 1831 BC in eastern China.
- The mobile phone company 02 claimed that the Apple iPhone was its fastest selling product of all time.

You can use second, third and fourth (not first) before superlatives.

- The pronghorn antelope is considered to be the world’s second fastest animal, after the cheetah.

Note that superlatives are normally followed by:

1 of before periods of time, and for specifying the group of things being compared
- According to folklore, 12 January, St Hilary’s Day, is the coldest day of the year in the UK.
- ExxonMobil is the most profitable of the multinational corporations listed by Forbes.

2 in before singular group nouns (e.g. the class, the team, the family)
- Dr Parr is the most experienced person in the team.

3 in or on as appropriate (not of) before words describing places or areas, i.e. in the world, in the UK, in the east, on the coast, on the river, etc.
- The driest place in the world is in Antarctica in an area called the Dry Valleys, which has seen no rain for nearly two million years.
- The Preluna Hotel is the tallest building on the seafront at Sliema in Malta.

Tip In formal contexts the superlative (without the) may simply mean ‘very’.
- The conclusion of the study was most surprising.

2.4 test yourself

A Write out the parts of the sentences in italics, replacing the adjectives or adverbs with superlative forms, and adding the correct prepositions where necessary.

1 According to Ito (2012), the Rongai is easy/the many routes to the summit of Mount Kilimanjaro.
2 Uriumi in western China is generally accepted to be far city/the planet from the sea.
3 In 2009, film critic Peter Ride nominated ‘Mulholland Drive’ (2001) as good film/the decade.
4 The team that completed the task efficiently was found to have pooled its resources at every stage of the process.
5 Carroll (2011) argues that the Bank of Montreal is now one of socially responsible companies/Canada.
6 An autocratic approach is criticized by Benn (2008) as being effective/all leadership styles.
7 Even carefully planned/expedition can encounter a sudden change in weather conditions.
8 Rat snakes are believed by some experts to be high climbing snakes/North America.
B Complete the sentences, using one word in each space.

1 Jeanne Calment, who died at the age of 122, has been verified as the world’s ___________ person.

2 At the Vaio X’s launch in 2009, Sony claimed that it was the world’s ___________ laptop, weighing only 655g.

3 Of the three sections reviewed, marketing was performing ___________ efficiently, and required an action plan to improve it.

4 Osaka is ___________’s third largest city by population after Tokyo and Yokohama.

5 Mongolia, with only 1.8 people per square kilometre, is the ___________ densely-___________ country ___________ Earth.

6 Iceland’s Althingi has ___________ strongest claim to be the ___________ ancient ___________ the world’s parliaments.

7 With an average rainfall of 211 mm, July is ___________ New Delhi.

8 Tokyo takes the top position, but immediately afterwards, with a modest lunch costing as much as $43, Oslo is now ___________ expensive city ___________ the planet, according to ECA rankings.

• Building costs under the new designs are not nearly as high (as under the old designs). (= the costs are much lower)
• With some modifications to the operating theatre, procedures could be carried out twice as quickly (as before).

2 Words or phrases that modify structures with than include much, a great deal, far, considerably, etc., or their opposites slightly, a little, marginally, etc.
• Significantly, it became far easier to obtain credit in the 1990s (than it was before).
• Swanson plc is marginally more successful in the hi-tech sector than its competitors.

You can also use three times, four times, etc. and percentages (but note that we would normally say twice as heavy as rather than two times heavier than).
• Steel is three times heavier than aluminium.
• Growth is expected to be 0.5% higher in this quarter (than the last).

Tip You can modify twice, three times, etc. themselves with words and phrases such as nearly, more than, slightly more than, exactly, or approximately.
• Significantly, it became far easier to obtain credit in the 1990s (than it was before).
• Experts believe that the meteor entering the Earth’s atmosphere was moving more than three times faster than was predicted last week.

3 To modify superlatives, you can use one of, almost/nearly, by far, or easily.
• The Niger is one of Africa’s longest rivers.
• Arctic sea ice melted at almost its fastest pace in 2010.
• Bob Hawke is by far the longest-serving Labor Prime Minister in Australia.

2.5 Modifying adjectives and adverbs

2.5 study

Comparative adjectives and adverbs are sometimes modified (i.e. made stronger, weaker, or more precise).
• Start-up companies face certain difficulties, but while some of these are similar across all industries, others hit manufacturing businesses much harder than service enterprises.

1 Words or phrases that modify as ... as ... structures include just (emphasizes the equality); almost/nearly, not quite or its opposite not nearly, twice, three times, four times, etc.
• Writing a good report can take almost as long as carrying out the market research itself.
• Vittrack, though successful, is not quite as profitable a company as its competitors. (= Vittrack is slightly less profitable than its competitors)
2.5 test yourself

Circle the correct option.

1. The number of holidays taken abroad by UK citizens was more/22%/nearly lower than last year.
2. Private companies are twice/considerably/just more common in the UK than public ones.
3. Despite outperforming all of its competitors in tests, the Samson desktop publishing system is a little/not quite/almost the cheapest available.
4. It is an axiom in business that customers are not nearly/by far/a great deal as interested in describing good experiences as bad ones.
5. With their moveable thumbs, chimpanzees are exactly/just/slightly as capable of grasping objects as humans.
6. The traditional Mediterranean diet is one of/far/twice the healthiest in the world.
7. Observers have claimed that the Antarctic is losing ice by far/twice/a great deal as fast as ten years ago.
8. With the new software in place, companies such as Vasco plc have been able to process considerably/more/approximately twice as many claims as before.

2.6 Words and phrases for expressing similarity

2.6 study

Specific words and expressions, as well as adjectives and adverbs, can be used to compare and contrast. This section focuses on ways of saying that things are the same or similar (almost the same). (See also page 67 in unit 7 Connectors for more structures that express similarity, including also, as well as, too, and not only ... but also.)

1. (The) same

(\textit{The}) same is frequently used to express similarity.
- Cats and dogs have almost the same capacity to be domesticated.

As is used as a connector.
- The proposal from Mitchell plc is exactly the same as Barker’s in its speed of delivery.
- When they are observed, people do not behave in the same way as they do in private.

Note in the first two examples above how the same is modified by almost and exactly. Other modifiers include just and precisely.

2. Similar, similarity, similarly

The adjective similar is followed by to when things are linked with common features, and by in before describing the quality that things share.
- Venus is quite similar to Earth in mass and size.
  (= Venus and Earth are quite similar in mass and size.)

Other modifiers, apart from quite above, include slightly, superficially, fairly, remarkably, very, and extremely.

Note also that the verb resemble means ‘is similar to’ (Venus resembles Earth in mass and size), and that in can be replaced by in terms of, as regards, or with respect to.

The noun similarity is used with between to compare two things, and with in to describe a shared quality.
- The main similarity between the Senate and the House of Representatives is that both houses are directly elected.
- There was a similarity in the approach taken to the crisis by all three companies.

Other modifiers with similarity, apart from main, include slight, superficial, apparent, distinct, obvious and striking.

Note how similarity, similar and the phrase in common can be used to express the same meaning.
- All living organisms have several similarities. = All living organisms have several similar features. = All living organisms have several features in common.

In common with can be used to link two or more things together.
- According to Samuels, the European Union has a great deal in common with the United Nations.

The adverb similarly can also be used.
- Smog is damaging trees in the mountains of south China. Similarly, acid rain is harming forests in the north of the country. (or ... south China. Acid rain is similarly harming forests ...)

3. Alike, like, likewise

Alike means the same as similar, and is normally used with the verb be after the things being compared.
- France and Germany are alike in that both support a thriving rental sector in their housing markets.
Like is also used with be, but between the things being compared (France is like Germany in that ...) and it is also used quite often on its own.

- Dolphins, like porpoises, breathe through blowholes on the top of their heads.

Modifiers with alike and like include (very) much, rather, somewhat, quite, and a little.

Note that alike is occasionally used on its own, when it cannot be modified (Dolphins and porpoises alike breathe through ...).

Likewise is used just like similarly (see 2 on page 021: Likewise, acid rain is ...)

Notice how, after words such as alike or different you can sometimes use in + a noun phrase (Rats and mice are similar in their colouring) or in that + a clause (Rats and mice are similar in that they are both grey or brown in colour).

2.6 test yourself

Complete each sentence with one of the words in the box. One word is not needed.

like to in similarly as that similar similarities same

1. Indonesian and English are ________ in their word order, but the former language has no tense system.
2. The two colleges are very much alike in ________ both draw in a high proportion of international students, and focus on the subject areas of business and law.
3. Bowson Brothers, ________ Parston plc, exports most of its products to Germany and France.
4. EasyJet targets exactly the same type of budget traveller ________ Ryanair.
5. Klein argues that there are distinct ________ between the working conditions in some Third World factories and those of 18th-century slave plantations.
6. Canterbury attracts tourists all year round. Bath ________ manages to maintain a significant number of visitors in summer and winter.
7. All successful leaders share some of the ________ characteristics.
8. A short sleep taken during the day is similar ________ type to non-rapid eye movement sleep at night.

2.7 Words and phrases for expressing contrast

2.7 study

This section focuses on ways of saying that things are different. (See also page 064 in unit 7 Connectors for more structures that express contrast, including although, despite, however, and while/whereas.)

1. Different, differ, difference

The adjective different and the verb differ normally follow the two things being compared.

- After working for several months with fellow chemist Stevens, Schenke took a different path towards their goal.
- The approaches taken by the two companies are different/differ in that Brennan and Smith offers an ecologically sustainable solution.

Notice how dissimilar and unlike could also be used in the above sentence. (The approaches taken by the two companies are dissimilar/are unlike each other in that ...)

Different + from and differ + from are normally used between the two things being compared.

- In law, a ‘responsive’ brief is different from/diffs from an ‘original’ brief in that it contains arguments directly responding to positions taken by the other side.

Note that dissimilar + to and unlike could also be used in the above sentence. (In law, a ‘responsive’ brief is dissimilar to/is unlike an ‘original’ brief in that ...)

Different can be modified by slightly/a little, rather, very, fundamentally, completely/quite, totally, and differ can be modified by placing these words afterwards: slightly/a little, fundamentally, completely, totally.

Difference is used with between to compare two things. In + noun may be added to specify the context.

- Parker explored the key difference between ‘leadership’ and ‘management’ in a series of seminars held in New York in early 2010.
- New research from Brown University has identified the difference in chewing between mammals and fish.

Note that, as well as key above, there are many modifiers that you can use with difference, including slight, minor, considerable, major, and significant.
2 In contrast to, contrary to, unlike

These expressions are all used before noun phrases to point out the contrast between things.
- An exit poll, in contrast to/contrary to/unlike an opinion poll, asks members of the public to reveal how they have just voted.
- In contrast to/Contrary to/Unlike earlier studies, Professor Cadogan’s report found that cholesterol measured in middle or old age showed no link to dementia.

Note that in contrast to and in contrast with are both acceptable, with no difference in meaning.
(See 1 on page 022 for another use of unlike.)

3 On the contrary, in contrast, on the other hand

These are all linking expressions that connect contrasting statements. Note, however, that while on the contrary contradicts an element of the previous statement, in contrast and on the other hand link two different but true situations.
- Selecting the right PR company is by no means easy; on the contrary, (contradicts easy) it may involve a great deal of research.
- The 1989 earthquake in the Santa Cruz Mountains occurred during an exceptionally dry period, preventing any large-scale landslides. In contrast/On the other hand, the great 1906 earthquake occurred after an unusually wet winter.

2.7 test yourself

Correct the incorrect sentences. Some sentences are already correct.
1 Swans, in contrast to many other species of bird, appear to mate for life.
2 The climate on the coast differs the humid interior in that it is often pleasantly cool and windy.
3 Gregory asserts that shale gas is not an energy solution to be welcomed. On the other hand, he argues, its environmental impact is likely to be devastating.
4 Contrary to northern hemisphere countries with their September start, the academic year in the southern hemisphere normally begins in January or February.
5 A significant political difference from the USA and the UK is that the former has a written constitution.
6 Some politicians support spending cuts as a means of reducing the deficit; on the contrary, others argue for a rise in personal taxation, particularly for wealthier citizens.
7 Steyn concludes that Japanese and British tourists have different expectations while on holiday.
8 Having a job at university provides a useful source of income; on the other hand, it can make life difficult when academic deadlines are imminent.
A Complete the text about a new factory with the comparative or superlative form of the word in brackets.

The opening of the new factory, fitted with 1 ________________ (up-to-date) equipment in the industry, meant that Ginnorex plc could produce 2 ________________ (high) quality goods than its competitors. The premises were located at a motorway intersection, ensuring 3 ________________ (fast) delivery times for the finished products, compared to the old suburban factory. Along with the building, Ginnorex invested in IT, for a 4 __________ (integrated) supply chain. These strategic decisions led to increased customer satisfaction; soon, the company was 5 ________________ (profitable) than ever before. In addition, the staff were 6 ________________ (happy) with their 7 ________________ (comfortable) working environment, so employee absenteeism became 8 ________________ (problematic). The HR department noted that staff turnover was 9 ________________ (low) in the city, when compared with other factories of a similar size. Last year, Ginnorex won an award for being 10 ________________ (good) local employer.

B Correct the seven mistakes in the text about the Olympic Games. Some sentences are correct.

1 The Olympics are sometimes described as a greatest show on earth. 2 The Summer Games are certainly the biggest event of the world in terms of the number of athletes involved. 3 However, most spectators do not realize that the so-called ‘Olympic family’ consists of many more people than just the competitors. 4 In fact, there are many more coaches, national officials, sports journalists, and other accredited personnel as athletes. 5 The Olympics usually end up being one of the most expensive shows on earth, as well. 6 The most popular sports differ than one host country to another; ice hockey is a major game in Canada but not in Brazil, for example. 7 The tickets that are the hardest to get are almost always for the opening and closing ceremonies. 8 The Paralympics, on other hand, until recently were not nearly as higher profile as the Olympics themselves. 9 It used to be easier enough to get tickets to the major Paralympic events. 10 Now, however, the Paralympics have become too popular to guarantee seats for all their fans.
C Complete the transcript of a presentation about economic difficulties, using the phrases in the box.

Let me begin my talk by saying that this country is in an economic situation for a generation. That is the reality. We are entering the sixth consecutive quarter of negative growth, period of recession in the working lives of most of you in this room. Businesses are going bankrupt. Only yesterday, one of our best and best-loved retail chains went into receivership. Unemployment is at its highest level since the Great Depression of the 1930s. So far the authorities have declined to take strong action. We need the government, and it must take possible action. I believe that change is possible. Everyone here, I deplore the excessive salaries and bonuses of the bankers and the boardroom elite. Those whom society has rewarded the most richly - must bear their share of the responsibility. However, many of you, I think the answer lies with less tax, not more regulation. Our tax burden is as our neighbours, and than some of the newly emerging economies that we are trying to compete with. way forward - the simplest solution - is to unshackle business, and let the economy grow as it can. And I say,

D Circle the correct options in the text. More than one option may be correct.

Microsoft is 'one of/by far the world's biggest software companies, and its well-established operating system, Windows, is 'easily/a great deal/by far the most widespread, according to Bernard-Jones (2010). Alike/Likewise/Similarly, industry statistics show that its Office suite of products is used by 'many/much/twice more people than any other competing product. Microsoft bundled its web browser, Internet Explorer, with Windows, a practice which proved too controversial controversial enough to trigger an anti-monopoly court case. The original judgement required Microsoft to break into two smaller companies, but a higher court overturned this ruling on appeal.

The position of Internet Explorer following the second round of the browser wars, circa 2006-2007, demonstrates how it is no longer as influential a product as before/product as it was/a product as it was. Harpenson (2009) argues that many unsophisticated computer users acted as though IE was the only browser, especially prior to the middle of that decade. On the other hand/On the contrary, there are several options. The second much/most/more popular browser after IE is Firefox, an open-source alternative. (This means that the underlying software code uses a licence that permits anyone to examine and develop it; this is unlike dissimilar to proprietary software where the copyright holder has exclusive legal rights.) Google brought out Chrome in 2008, claiming that the new product differed to/from other browsers in that it was both faster and more secure. The dominance once enjoyed by Microsoft is, it seems, less and less apparent.
E Complete the words in the transcript of a seminar discussion. Two university students are talking about learning languages at different ages.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alain</th>
<th>I think it's much <strong>e</strong>__________ to learn a language as a child than as an adult. Babies learn languages without any effort, but the <strong>o</strong>__________ you get, the <strong>m</strong>__________ you struggle.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maria</td>
<td>I know what you mean, but look at it this way: babies, <strong>u</strong>__________ adults, only have to learn how to speak; they don't have to worry about <strong>reading and writing</strong>!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alain</td>
<td>Yes, but it's <strong>e</strong>__________ the same with children studying a second language at school. They pick up the basics of a new language <strong>m</strong>__________ more <strong>q</strong>__________ than adults do. And the <strong>y</strong>__________ they are, the easier it is for them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maria</td>
<td>My own experience is <strong>q</strong>__________ different <strong>f</strong><strong><strong><strong><strong><strong>. Yours, I'm afraid! Children may be <strong>b</strong></strong></strong></strong></strong></strong> than adults at pronunciation, but they're not always very motivated at school, are they? I took English classes all through high school, but it wasn't <strong>n</strong>__________ as useful as the time I spent working at my aunt's hotel in the summer. Every day I could understand a little more than <strong>b</strong><strong><strong><strong><strong><strong>, and I got <strong>m</strong></strong></strong></strong></strong></strong> and <strong>m</strong>__________ confident the <strong>e</strong>__________ I worked there. By the time I went back to school, I was <strong>e</strong>__________ the <strong>b</strong>__________ in the class.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

F Correct the description of a corporate headquarters by adding one word to each sentence.

1. British Airways, in common many other large international companies, invested in prestigious, purpose-built headquarters.  
2. The Waterside complex, near Heathrow Airport, is in many respects similar **o**ther corporate centres.  
3. Its steel and glass office buildings, for example, look virtually the same **h**undreds of others throughout the world.  
4. The noticeable innovation is The Street, the long, covered space that all six office blocks open onto, which includes a supermarket, a hairdresser's, and a gym.  
5. All employees, from the most highly paid senior managers to most junior clerical workers, share these facilities.  
6. BA commissioned Waterside in tandem with a business re-design process, with the aim of making working life more efficient it was in its previous headquarters.  
7. The company wanted to use space than it had in its old offices, partly in order to save money.  
8. At the same time, it wanted to find ways to work effectively.  
9. One step was to persuade employees to accept hot-desking, in contrast the previous system of fixed work stations.  
10. One of biggest changes was to remove the space allocated to archives, first by moving the paper storage offsite, and then by digitizing all the records.  

AWL GLOSSARY

**invest** to spend money on something in order to make it better or more successful

**facilities** buildings, services, equipment, etc. that are provided for a particular purpose

**commission** to officially ask somebody to write, make, or create something

**previous** happening or existing before the event or object that you are talking about

**remove** to take something away from a place

**allocate** to give something officially to something for a particular purpose
Put the words in italics in the correct order to complete the text about London and New York.

London and New York *common have in much*, in that they are world leaders in the fields of art, design, fashion, music, and much else. Indeed, *are between similarities there obvious* these two cities. However, *difference is there one significant*: London is a political capital, whereas New York is not. Both, of course, are commercial, financial, and retail capitals. *The UK's city London is most populous*; similarly, New York holds that position in the United States *(alike although exactly is not situation the*, given the different legal status of suburbs in each country). There is, finally, *in similarity a striking* the ability of these two cities to attract tourists in every season of the year.

Rewrite the phrases in italics, using the words in brackets, to complete the text about film remakes.

There can be several reasons for remaking an earlier film. Firstly, a director or producer may believe that the central idea of the original film *is so strong that it will draw in* (enough) a new generation of cinema-goers. Secondly, a production company might decide that though the source film was interesting in some way, *it was not realized as successfully as it could have been* (more). A further reason might be that the first film, because of the contemporary censorship laws, *was cautious and did not do justice to its theme* (too). Similarly, it might be that, in terms of creating special effects, *technology today is more advanced than it was at the time of the source film* (not as ... as). In both these last two cases, it could be argued that the ‘real’ film was waiting to be made. In the end, of course, whether *the new version resembles the original film* (similar) or not, the remake has to be judged on its own terms.

Write two short texts (100–200 words), using the language of comparison and contrast.

1. Compare the advantages and disadvantages for a student of doing a degree at a local college or a university in the capital city. Choose at least three factors to compare (e.g. cost, flexibility of study, quality of qualification).

2. Compare two cities (or two regions of the same country or two countries) that you know. Make your point of view clear, whether you are considering them as a resident, a tourist, or a company considering setting up an office there.
Read the text, then try to answer the questions.

1. What is the general function of the underlined words and phrases that come before and after the nouns in bold?
2. How do the underlined words that come before the bold nouns differ from one another grammatically?

One cause of the economic troubles is the ‘tsunami effect’, which does not refer to a literal tsunami, but rather to the metaphorical ripples and shockwaves of the highly globalized economy. Resource extraction and the manufacture of commodities are activities carried out on a worldwide scale: a problem anywhere along the production line, from freak weather to bad harvests to the blockage of a shipping channel, can cause extensive economic disruption.

The meaning of a noun can be made more precise by the words immediately before (pre-modifying words) or after it (post-modifying words). These words and the noun together are called the ‘noun phrase’. Pre-modifying words can help you to describe the noun, and post-modifying words and phrases can be effective in connecting your noun to your next idea. Careful use of noun phrases is an economical way of conveying complex and detailed information.

Pre-modifying words include articles, adjectives and nouns.
- When a famous actor died in 2009, a junior reporter was asked to prepare his obituary. Unfortunately, the journalist took all her information from a page of Wikipedia that contained several serious errors.
- In this paper, we propose a task-driven approach to software design.
- A single case of food poisoning can sometimes produce a regional health scare.

Post-modifying structures include prepositional phrases and noun clauses.
- An investigation into the relationship between politicians and the press is urgently required, in the view of backbench MP Tom Watson.
- The argument that early exposure to alcoholic drinks in young people can be beneficial comes under attack in a study published by the Drink Awareness Campaign in 2010.

Note that relative clauses also act as post-modifying structures (see unit 5 Relative clauses).

Suggested answers: see page 192
3.1 Articles

3.1 study

1 Articles in general

As the description implies, the indefinite articles a and an are used to introduce a general idea or to refer to an indefinite example of something, whereas the definite article the is used to refer to a definite thing, either when there is only one in existence or when the reader or listener knows which specific thing we are referring to.

- A new committee is to be set up by the government to consider press regulation.

Particular uses of a/an and the (or no article) to be aware of are:

- geographical names (e.g. countries, mountains, rivers, etc.), which need to be learned
- expressions such as miles an hour, times a day/week/month, etc.
- means of transport (by car/train, etc.)
- places used in a general sense (the number of people at work or at university)
- the government, the police, the media, the Italians, the rich (but rich people), etc.
- dictionary definitions and generalizations (a/the bear is an animal that ..., bears are animals that ...).

(See page 162 in unit 18 Using defining language for more examples of definitions.)

2 Articles with uncountable nouns

A number of common nouns such as water, money and information are described as 'uncountable' because they have no plural form. We can't normally use a/an with these nouns or add -s to them: an equipment, some advices.

- Before the era of the 'career politician', politics was seen as a profession to enter once you had already followed another form of employment for a number of years.

Some nouns which are usually uncountable can be countable when used with a different and more specific meaning.

- Relevant experience is normally required for most jobs. BUT The Roper Poll of 2002 suggested that 14% of Americans had had or knew of someone who had had an experience of UFO activity. (an experience = an incident in one's life)
- Success in business requires a measure of luck as well as aptitude and hard work. BUT Before becoming CEO of Paige plc, Susan Butterworth owned a small business in New Mexico. (a business = a company)
- As well as offering a financial reward, work provides an individual with a level of self-esteem. BUT The quality of a work should be measured by its beauty or ability to provoke thought rather than its market value. (a work = a work of art such as a play or painting)

Note that uncountable nouns can be 'counted' or 'separated' by general words and phrases such as a piece of (a piece of evidence/advice) and an item of (an item of information/clothing) or specific nouns, (a grain of rice, a strip of metal, a strand of hair, a means of transport).

- A conference normally takes place in the newsroom to decide which item of news will lead the evening broadcast.

3.1 test yourself

Correct the articles. Some sentences are already correct.

1 Google originated in the research project by Larry Page and Sergey Brin.
2 A marsupial is a mammal, such as a kangaroo, that is carried after birth in a pouch on the mother's belly.
3 A good advice for anyone planning to rent a property is to read the tenancy agreement carefully.
4 James Dyson opened a factory and a research centre in Wiltshire in 1993. A factory produced the first dual cyclone vacuum cleaner.
5 Insufficient capital is a common reason for a business to fail.
6 Throughout the 1980s, Marston carried out important research into dying languages.
7 The number of patients in the hospital in the UK has risen once again.
8 The Millennium Bridge across Thames was closed for two years while modifications were made to its structure.
3.2 Quantifiers

Quantifiers (e.g. all, many, some) describe nouns in terms of quantity. When used with definite noun phrases (e.g. the answers) they are normally followed by of (some of the answers). In this section, they are divided into three groups: the most inclusive (all, etc.); large and smaller quantities (many, some, etc.); and words that are often used negatively (any, neither, etc.).

1. **All, both, each, every**

All is used with countable and uncountable nouns; both is used with plural uncountable nouns. In definite noun phrases, of is sometimes left out after all, and the may be omitted before numbers; with both, of and the may be left out.

- The Labour Party majority was reduced each time in all three (of the) elections that Tony Blair won.
- **Both** (of the) bills were defeated by a large majority.

Each and every refer to individual members of a group and are used with singular countable nouns. Each tends to focus on the individual thing in a group; every emphasizes the individual as a member of a group or series. In the phrase each/every one of, one can be left out after each.

- **Each** (one) of the symphony's movements depicts a different season in the year. (Each because of the focus on separate parts.)
- **Every** student passed the final examination after following this method. (Every because of a focus on all.)

Tip: Every can be used with a plural period of time to describe how often something happens.

- The Olympics take place **every four years**.
- Health and safety checks are carried out **every six months**.

2. **Many, much, some, few, little, enough**

Many is used with plural countable nouns and much with uncountable nouns. In informal and spoken English they tend to be used only in questions and negative structures, and even in formal writing much is often replaced by a great deal of or plenty of in positive statements (unless it is used with so, too, or as).

- The artefacts discovered by Howard Carter and his team were able to provide scholars with **much a great deal of** information on the practices of royal burial.

Some combines with uncountable and plural countable nouns to indicate a moderate amount or number (some information, some board members). In academic English you can use it to suggest a contrast in opinion, and to mean ‘approximately’ before a number, percentage, etc. In the latter case, it can suggest a figure higher than was expected.

- **Some** psychologists have argued that happiness is governed by factors outside our control. (The implication is that there are other psychologists who take a different view.)
- Cleveland plc now exports its **weighing machines to twenty countries**. (The implication is that this is an achievement.)

A few (with countable nouns) and a little (with uncountable nouns) have a similar meaning to some, whereas few and little without the indefinite article mean ‘not many’.

- **Few** critics were impressed by the staging of the opera, and this was reflected in the following day’s reviews.

You can use enough before countable and uncountable nouns. It can be modified with just, more than, (not) nearly, and quite.

- **Some commentators believe that there have been more than enough opportunities for parliament to debate the death penalty, without introducing a new bill.** (See page 017 in unit 2 Comparing and contrasting for the use of more, most, less and least in comparisons.)

3. **Any, either, neither, no, none**

As well as being used in questions and negative structures, any can suggest ‘if there is any’ or ‘it doesn’t matter which’ in positive sentences with countable or uncountable nouns.

- Any opposition to the new water scheme is likely to come from local farmers who have traditionally taken as much water as they like from the reservoir.
- Any medicine taken in a very high dosage is likely to have side effects.

In noun phrases, either and neither are used with singular nouns and verbs to talk about groups of two.

- The river could be dammed or diverted, but neither option is without its risks.
- (in a seminar) We can consider **either of the two proposals/either proposal first. It doesn’t matter.**
You can use no in a noun phrase as a more emphatic form of not any.

- There were no heated arguments at the talks, but neither was there a firm agreement on the way forward.

Note that in formal English, none of + plural noun is followed by a singular verb, and you can use not one of as a more emphatic alternative.

- None of / Not one of the factories concerned has passed a full health and safety inspection.

3.2 test yourself

Complete each sentence with a quantifier. In two of the sentences two quantifiers are possible.

1. Carston plc had ___________ success in extending its business to the USA, and soon had to close all its branches.
2. A late surge in sales produced just ___________ income for the company to survive.
3. ___________ application received after the deadline will be rejected.
4. ___________ of the two candidates made an opening statement before the debate took place.
5. Bywater Ltd will have ___________ thirty subsidiaries worldwide after its expansion programme is complete.
6. Becoming self-employed or setting up a limited company: in theory, ___________ option is open to the freelancer.
7. Some printers support automatic printing on ___________ sides of the paper (known as 'duplex printing').
8. Professor Chalmers claims that a virtual reality helmet that mimics ___________ five senses will be ready within five years.

3.3 Adjectives + nouns

3.3 study

Pre-modifying nouns with compound adjectives (a small-scale experiment), adverb-adjective combinations (a potentially irreversible decline) and coordinated adjectives (strict and systematic procedures) are an effective way of conveying information economically, normally avoiding a relative clause.

- The offices benefit from a recently-installed air-conditioning system. (= The offices benefit from an air-conditioning system that was recently installed.)

1. Compound adjectives

Compound adjectives, which are usually hyphenated before nouns, can be formed in a number of ways.

ADJECTIVE + PAST/PRESENT PARTICIPLE (ready-made, best-selling, longest-serving)

ADJECTIVE + NOUN (free-market, hi-tech, right-wing)

• The architect Mary Chang was commended for her cutting-edge hospice designs.

NOUN + NOUN, ADJECTIVE OR PAST/PRESENT PARTICIPLE (smoke-free, fuel-injected, peace-keeping)

• Year-end bonuses for bankers have become a contentious issue since the banking crisis of 2008.

• An element of performance-led pay is appropriate to some professional situations.

PAST PARTICIPLE + ADVERB (paid-up, screened-off, left-over)

Tip Note the difference in meaning between adjectives such as interested, disappointed, and frightened (describing how we feel) and their counterparts ending in -ing (describing what makes us feel that way).

- Exhausting negotiations and tired participants often lead to poor decisions.

2. Adverb + adjective combinations

Adverbs can combine with adjectives (highly sensitive, politically independent); with past participles (extensively-researched, well-planned, highly-educated), and with present participles (slow-moving, rapidly-growing). The hyphen is optional, but tends to be used with the second two categories.

• The relatively low cost of shale gas makes it an attractive, if controversial, alternative to traditional energy sources.

• A hotel in Bordeaux is significantly cheaper to run than a comparably-sized establishment in Paris.

(See page 167 in unit 19 Collocation for more adverb + adjective combinations that can be placed before nouns.)
3 Coordinated adjectives

Coordinated adjectives, which are linked by and, give two dimensions to the description of a noun. Sometimes the description is made more inclusive by mentioning opposites (male and female, old and new, positive and negative) and sometimes the second adjective is fairly similar to the first (social and cultural, economic and political, safe and effective).

- Long-term unemployment can affect a person's mental and physical health.
- Juries in fraud cases are often presented with complex and technical information.

If you use more than one adjective to pre-modify a noun, follow this order: opinion, size, age, shape, colour, origin, material, purpose + noun:

- GlaxoSmithKline plc is a global (size) pharmaceutical (purpose) company headquartered in London.

3.3 test yourself

Complete each sentence with one of the words or phrases in the box.

- up -divided and private -boosting -distance -fitting and secondary -renowned

1 An interesting model is one whereby public __________ TV channels must contribute a percentage of their turnover to the national film-making industry.
2 The most expensive item on show in the costume collection was a red silk dress designed by the world __________ couturier Hanae Mori.
3 Badly __________ seatbelts can be almost as dangerous as a complete absence of restraint.
4 The writer of a dissertation will normally make use of primary __________ sources in their work.
5 The argument that England is a geographically __________ country gains ground when you notice the higher unemployment figures in the north.
6 Long __________ commuting by train is much more common than it used to be in the UK.
7 Drug abuse amongst pre-teen children is a growing problem in the boarded __________ inner-city areas of some American cities.
8 Some CEOs invite senior managers to confidence __________ weekend retreats.

3.4 Nouns + nouns

3.4 study

You will be aware from everyday English of the way that a noun can pre-modify another noun by acting like an adjective (a fur coat, a bathroom door, a horse race). The same thing happens in academic writing, allowing for the concise expression of complex ideas. It is a technique you should consider using wherever you can.

- Few government measures have raised as much public opposition as the poll tax of 1989. (= Few measures taken by the government have raised as much opposition from the public ...)

You can combine nouns to suggest a variety of relationships.

1 Source (shale gas = gas that comes from shale)
2 Purpose (defence systems = systems that are used for defence)
3 Specialization (accounts manager = a manager who is in charge of accounts)
4 Composition (lead walls = walls made of lead)
5 Content (linguistics essay = an essay on/about linguistics)
6 Location (back pain = pain in the back)
7 Time (weekend job = a job that takes place at the weekend)

(See page 169 in unit 19 Collocation for more noun + noun combinations.)

The first noun in these combinations is normally singular (trains train timetable, markets market crash), unless it is always plural (e.g. the subject linguistics) or generally plural (e.g. accounts as part of a company). Nouns that are often used in the plural include arts (arts centre), arms (arms manufacturer), and sales (sales figures).

Sometimes you can use noun + noun + noun (school trip supervisor, police patrol car, accident research centre, government press release, business opportunities conference, inner-city drugs problem).

There are a number of common noun + and + noun phrases that can act as pre-modifiers, such as trial and error, health and safety, and law and order.

- A trial and error approach is sometimes the best way forward in scientific research.
3.4 test yourself

Complete each sentence with one of the words or phrases in the box.

water European Union member market arts research protest cash family law and

1 There are normally maximum limits on ______________ withdrawals from ATMs.
2 ______________ order debates in Parliament on matters such as the latest crime figures normally attract a full house.
3 ______________ movements against government cutbacks are already taking place in the UK.
4 Growth in the number of Vietnam’s telecom companies has been so strong that there are now indications of ______________ saturation.
5 Since 2007, there have been 27 ______________ states.
6 The role of the ______________ doctor has been weakened by the transience of local populations.
7 ______________ supplies to rural communities have been put at risk by the drought.
8 The Getty Foundation is a major source of ______________ funding, particularly in the area of museums and archives.

3.5 Nouns + prepositional phrases

3.5 study

Nouns are often post-modified by prepositional phrases (phrases that begin with a preposition, e.g. for, in, or of).
- Public protests can sometimes lead to a change in the law.

Sometimes these phrases can be longer and more complex.
- There is a risk of reaching a simplistic rather than useful conclusion if the enquiry is rushed.

Certain nouns are followed by particular prepositions (sometimes more than one), and these patterns need to be learned. Here is a selected list of nouns and their prepositions, arranged by preposition. Nouns that are related to each other in meaning are given first in boxes as a memory aid and the other nouns follow in alphabetical order.

(See page 35 at the end of this unit for a list arranged alphabetically by noun.)

1 + for appetite, demand case, motivation, reason advertisement, application, basis (also basis of), need, preference, request, respect, substitute

- In the latest poll, a majority of those taking part expressed a preference for the ‘first past the post’ electoral system.
- If both sides on the negotiating table are looking for a settlement, then there is normally the basis for/of a potentially fruitful discussion.

2 + in decrease, drop, fall, reduction, increase, rise belief, change (also change to), interest

- There was a sharp rise in inflation in the first quarter of 2009.
- Changes in/to the way that export licences are granted are likely to be made at the end of the year.

3 + into enquiry, investigation, research (also research on/in) insight (also insight on)

- Research into/on/in social work practice indicates that time spent face-to-face with clients is falling significantly.
- Studies of chimpanzees can provide an insight into/on human behaviour.

Note that we use enquiry about for smaller or more personal issues (make an enquiry about the opportunities for doctoral research).

4 + of analysis, examination, exploration (also examination/exploration into) example, type means, method, way cause, cost, description, dozens, experience (also experience in), idea, importance, knowledge, lack/shortage, level, opinion, part, risk, study (also study into), victim

- An analysis of the data shows which illnesses are likely to be exacerbated by stress.
- All of the team had previous experience of/in high-altitude climbing.

Note that in 3 and 4 above, the preposition into can suggest a deeper analysis (an examination of the photo, but an examination of into the causes of the conflict).
Some commentators see a ban on smoking in open-air spaces such as parks as the logical next step.

Note that about can follow article, book, essay, lecture, and project but sounds less precise and more informal.

Protestors argue that wind farms cause visual damage to the environment.

The right to silence on the part of a suspect is integral to some legal systems.

Progress towards meeting the provisions of the Kyoto agreement has been worryingly slow.

Some police forces take a more lenient attitude to/towards the possession of ‘soft’ drugs for personal use.

### 3.5 test yourself

**Complete each sentence with a preposition.**

1. There have been a number of recent articles _______ what is perceived as abnormal worldwide weather patterns.
2. As an alternative _______ conventional cars, hybrids still have a great deal to prove to the would-be consumer.
3. An investigation _______ the train crash resulted in a substantial fine for the track maintenance company.
4. James Hopper is the second CEO in recent weeks to complain about a shortage _______ young UK entrepreneurs.
5. There is no substitute _______ practical, on-the-job training.
6. A move _______ vegetarianism is particularly prevalent amongst teenagers.
7. Some victims _______ identity theft have found themselves liable for their losses through their personal behaviour.
8. There is a growing interest _______ ecologically-sustainable ways of heating domestic properties.

### 3.6 Nouns + noun clauses

#### 3.6 study

Look at these two sentences:
- The serious issues that the enquiry has raised may lead to new laws.
- The fact that the enquiry raises a number of serious issues should surprise no one.

The bold part of the first sentence is a relative clause: *that* could be left out or replaced by *which*. Using a relative clause is a useful way of post-modifying a noun (in this case issues).

The bold part of the second sentence is different: it is a noun clause, which completes the meaning of the fact. *That* cannot be left out or replaced. A helpful way of looking at these sentences may be to regard the noun and its clause as a single complex idea controlling the main verb.

- *The belief that an industrial dispute can be resolved without some form of negotiation sometimes causes long and avoidable delays.*

Sentences with noun clauses are useful in your writing because they enable you to keep the information that you are conveying in the foreground, while at the same time allowing you to make a comment on it through the type of noun that you choose (fact or belief, as above, or statement, warning, or hypothesis below).

- Many of the journalists present at the press conference were dismissive of the statement that the police had investigated the matter thoroughly.
- The warning that sea levels could rise significantly even after a small earth tremor was taken seriously, and several coastal villages were evacuated.
- The experiment was designed to test the hypothesis that members of the public will tend to follow the instructions of authority figures even when these would appear to conflict with their normal values.

**Tip** Here are some of the nouns that often precede noun clauses: announcement, argument, assumption, belief, claim, conclusion, danger, doubt, effect, fact, hypothesis, idea, impression, likelihood, news, possibility, probability, proposition, prospect, risk, rule, rumour, statement, view, warning.
3.6 test yourself

Circle the correct option.

1 Halt has criticized the probability/proposition that people with depression have a clearer perception of reality.

2 The news/rule that the Labour Party Shadow Cabinet must be elected needs to change, according to McTernan.

3 The conclusion/claim that Kipling may have wished readers of The White Man's Burden to reach was that both the colonizers and the colonized were trapped in the imperial system.

4 Locke argues against the doubt/view that there are such things as 'innate' ideas.

5 Share prices in Comtech plc rose when the risk/news that it had won a major Pentagon contract was released.

6 Most economic theories are based on the effect/assumption that people tend to act rationally.

Nouns + prepositions

advertisement for
alternative to
analysis of
answer to
appetite for
application for
approach to
article on
assignment on
attack against
attack on
attention to
ban on
basis for
basis of
belief in
book on
case for
cause of
change in
change to
cost of
damage to
decrease in
demand for
description of
dissertation on
dozens of
drop in
emphasis on
enquiry into
essay on
examination of
examination into
example of
experience in
experience of
expert in
expert on
exploration into
exploration of
fall in
idea of
importance of
increase in
insight into
insight on
interest in
introduction to
investigation into
knowledge of
lack of
lecture on
means of
method of
motivation for
need for
opinion of
part of
preference for
project on
reason for
reduction in
request for
research in
research into
research on
respect for
response to
right to
rise in
risk of
shortage of
study into
study of
substitute for
tax on
type of
victim of
way of
work on
**A** Complete the text about the role of NGOs after conflict, using the nouns and adjectives in the box.

Non-governmental organizations (NGOs) have had to reconsider their strategies in dealing with young veterans of conflict. Former 1._________ soldiers face 2._________ difficulties in reintegrating into their communities, according to Babush (2009). There used to be an understanding amongst 3._________ agencies and the relevant 4._________ authorities that reintegration had a finite 5._________ date. This model has been reassessed in 6._________ years and replaced with a more realistic view. In Sierra Leone, for example, Child Safety International reports that the government has revised its 7._________ deadline for 8._________ youth to complete 9._________ training and claim 10._________ aid to start a small business.

**B** Complete the text about cycling, using the noun clauses [a–f].

a. that traffic patterns will shift for the better
b. that cycling brings many benefits to a country or city
c. that the numbers speak for themselves
d. that cycling can be advantageous for their city
e. that cyclists run a heightened risk of accidents
f. that treating the physical trauma (broken bones, etc.) bears a cost of its own

The proposition 1.____ can be measured financially. It is a fact 2.____, and from this it follows 3.____. However, on balance, regular cyclists live longer than people who have a sedentary lifestyle. Another benefit to the community is the likelihood 4.____. In other words, when a critical mass of workers commutes by bicycle, this lowers the number of cars on the road at rush hours. Mayors and councillors all over the world are coming to the conclusion 5.____ and therefore 6.____.

**C** Complete the text about data storage, using the words and phrases in the box.

To store data effectively is essential to 1._________ organization. Two 2._________ systems are paper and electronic. 3._________ filing systems do not require any power and do not become obsolete. They provide a 4._________ archive but require a 5._________ amount of space. Paper 6._________ necessitate a 7._________ catalogue, or they soon become 8._________ unusable. On the other hand, they do offer the benefit of reliability. The dominance of computer technology means that there is 9._________ paper storage in the MegaCorp plc offices. Files stored on a computer are easy to access and require no physical 9._________ space. However, they do run the risk 10._________, if hardware or software becomes unobtainable over time.
D Rewrite the underlined parts of the sentences, following the instructions in brackets.

1. The 2004 inquiry into the funding of the arts in the regions (use three words) criticized the way in which grants awarded by government (use two words) had been distributed.

2. Stonebridge (2009) explores the phenomenon of riots that take place in the summer (use two words) in UK and American cities.

3. New legislation is unlikely to change beliefs that have been held for a long time (use a compound adjective and a noun) over the place of religion in society.

4. Freedom of the press (use two words) and human rights are often linked, argues Hogg (2010).

5. A documentary that was broadcast recently (use a compound adjective and a noun) suggested that residents in care homes (use three words) are not always treated with the respect they deserve.

6. Allegations of bribery (use two words) have been made against several European companies that trade in oil (use a compound adjective and a noun).

7. Drivers of tankers that carry fuel (use two words) are required to take a test in fire safety (use three words).

8. Trucks that have broken down (use a compound adjective and a noun) are sometimes abandoned in this region because of a lack of spare parts.

9. Products made from plastic (use two words) are rarely biodegradable.

10. Reliable statistics for the length of time that people are expected to live (use three words) are not yet available for the island.

E Put the words in each phrase in the correct order. Then use the phrases to complete the text about the response to the banking crisis in the first decade of the 21st century.

Let us now turn to the protests following 1__ and 2__ in 2008-2009, the ramifications of which continue to be felt. 3__ were bailed out by the state. 4__ has exposed them to 5__ than they are used to. When these banks and financial institutions sought to continue paying their executives year-end bonuses 6__, annual salary, the public began to take an interest. 7__, from polite but firm letters to newspaper editors to window-smashing, have been the response.

F Match each word or phrase in box A with its partner in box B. Then use some of the phrases to write 100–200 words about the founder of Apple Inc., Steve Jobs.

A ground- the importance hardware relatively customer demand

B satisfaction high cost products for breaking and software engineers of

AWL GLOSSARY

funding: the act of providing money for a particular purpose

grant: a sum of money that is given by the government or by another organization to be used for a particular purpose

distribute: to give things to a large number of people; to share something between a number of people

abandon: to leave a thing or place, especially because it is impossible or dangerous to stay

reliable: that is likely to be correct or true

funds: money that is available to be spent

collapse: a sudden failure of something, such as an institution, a business, or a course of action

expose: to put somebody/something in a place or situation where they are not protected from something harmful or unpleasant

institution: a large important organization that has a particular purpose, for example, a university or bank

seek: to try to do something

response: a reaction to something that has happened or been said
Being formal and informal

Introduction

Look at two texts on the same subject. Where do you think you would see them? What are the main differences between them? Identify at least three specific examples.

What should you wear when you start your first real job? Obviously, things are different depending on whether you’re a guy or a gal, but a lot of the decisions are the same. You’re probably worried about the interview and the first few days at work. The interview, of course, is where they decide if they’re actually going to hire you. But also, you have to think about the trial period when you and the employer look each other over. It’s a two-way street, isn’t it? Clothes are a good way of seeing if you’ll fit in. It’s part of what they call the ‘corporate culture’.

Many young people graduating from university are unsure about the clothes they need when they embark on their chosen careers. The details are different for men and women, but the principles are the same. In most cases, the main concern is the job interview itself, and, secondarily, the first week once hired. At the interview, the company assesses the candidate and makes a decision on whether to offer a contract of employment, usually on a probationary basis of six months. This is to see if a candidate will fit in to the corporate culture.

Suggested answers: see page 193

Academic language should always be clear and logical, but it should also conform to its own genre or style, otherwise it risks distracting the reader or listener from the main purpose. Academic English, particularly when written, is usually described as ‘formal’ language. The formality of academic writing is characterized by the following.

1 An impersonal rather than a personal style, including the use of structures that begin with it and there, rather than the personal pronouns I, we and you.
   - There needs to be a proper exploration of the causes of the riots.

2 A tendency to base structures around nouns rather than verbs (called ‘nominalization’).
   - The research team made a careful assessment of the data. (Rather than The research team assessed the data carefully.)

3 The use of formal vocabulary, such as resign from rather than quit a job, and children rather than kids.

4 A preference for a cautious and objective approach, with evidence to support our ideas, and consideration given to the views of others, along with the avoidance of emotive or subjective language such as disgusting or marvellous.

In this unit, the first three areas are covered in some depth, but note that, for the fourth, you should refer to unit 14 Hedging for an in-depth analysis.

Unit contents

1 Nominalization page 039
2 Using it... and there... page 040
3 Using I, we, you and one page 040
4 Formal verbs, nouns and adjectives page 041
5 Other formal verbs, phrases, and structures page 043

See also page 086 in unit 9 Passives for the use of the passive voice to demonstrate objectivity.
Nominalization

4.1 study

Nominalization is the process of focusing your writing around nouns rather than verbs or adjectives. Not only do nouns make your language more impersonal, they also allow you to add information to your writing more easily and to use structures that place the emphasis on an important event rather than on the agent (the person or thing that made it happen).

- Severe weather conditions in the developing world often lead to short-term poverty. (verb phrase)
  → Severe weather conditions in the developing world are often the cause of short-term poverty. (noun phrase)
  → Severe weather conditions in the developing world are often the primary cause of short-term poverty. (noun phrase with additional information)

- The council converted the disused factory into a community centre ...
  → The conversion of the disused factory into a community centre... (provided a much-needed social space for the area).

Note that in the example above the important word (conversion) is now at the beginning of the sentence.

1 Nominalizations from verbs

- Governments or central banks vary (verb) interest rates to control (verb) the economy.
  → Variations (noun) in interest rates are a key instrument (additional information) in economic control (noun).

- To maintain staff motivation, companies need to consult with managers before changing their job descriptions.
  → Consultation with managers over changes to their job descriptions is vital in maintaining their motivation.

Note that you can also nominalize by using the -ing forms of verbs.

- If companies continue to burn the forests, they are likely to destroy much of the local flora and fauna.
  → The continued burning of the forest will lead to the destruction of much of the local flora and fauna.

2 Nominalizations from adjectives

- The judge will decide finally on how long (adjective) the offender remains in jail.
  → The judge will make the final decision on the length (noun) of the offender’s prison sentence.

- The context in which it is exhibited may determine whether or not a painting is powerful.
  → The power of a painting may be determined by the context in which it is exhibited.

3 Nominalizations from adjectives

- The judge will decide finally on how long (adjective) the offender remains in jail.
  → The judge will make the final decision on the length (noun) of the offender’s prison sentence.

- The context in which it is exhibited may determine whether or not a painting is powerful.
  → The power of a painting may be determined by the context in which it is exhibited.

4.1 test yourself

Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning as the first. Use one noun in each space.

1. It is essential to communicate regularly but briefly with the sales force in the field.
   Regular but brief ___________ with the sales force in the field is essential.

2. Local authorities preserved a wide area of land from being developed, and this allowed them to create a park.
   The ___________ of a wide area of land from ___________ allowed local authorities to create a park.

3. The presenter questioned whether some of the research into prime numbers was relevant.
   The ___________ of some of the research into prime numbers was questioned by the presenter.

4. Orton supports Foster, who predicts slow economic growth led by the service sector.
   Orton supports Foster in his ___________ of slow economic growth led by the service sector.

5. The political situation must be stable before it is possible for poverty in this part of Africa to be eliminated.
   The ___________ of the political situation is a pre-condition for the ___________ of poverty in this part of Africa.

TIP Sometimes you can use a completely different noun to express the same meaning as a verb or adjective.

- Parts of the country’s infrastructure have been getting better in the last two or three years.
  → There have been some improvements in the country’s infrastructure in the last two or three years.

TIP Here are some more adjective-noun partnerships: beneficial/benefit, coherent/coherence, enormous/enormity, intelligent/intelligence, logical/logic, relevant/relevance, secure/security, similar/similarity, stable/stability.

4.1 Nominalization

Nominalization is the process of focusing your writing around nouns rather than verbs or adjectives. Not only do nouns make your language more impersonal, they also allow you to add information to your writing more easily and to use structures that place the emphasis on an important event rather than on the agent (the person or thing that made it happen).

- Severe weather conditions in the developing world often lead to short-term poverty. (verb phrase)
  → Severe weather conditions in the developing world are often the cause of short-term poverty. (noun phrase)
  → Severe weather conditions in the developing world are often the primary cause of short-term poverty. (noun phrase with additional information)

- The council converted the disused factory into a community centre ...
  → The conversion of the disused factory into a community centre... (provided a much-needed social space for the area).

Note that in the example above the important word (conversion) is now at the beginning of the sentence.

1 Nominalizations from verbs

- Governments or central banks vary (verb) interest rates to control (verb) the economy.
  → Variations (noun) in interest rates are a key instrument (additional information) in economic control (noun).

- To maintain staff motivation, companies need to consult with managers before changing their job descriptions.
  → Consultation with managers over changes to their job descriptions is vital in maintaining their motivation.

Note that you can also nominalize by using the -ing forms of verbs.

- If companies continue to burn the forests, they are likely to destroy much of the local flora and fauna.
  → The continued burning of the forest will lead to the destruction of much of the local flora and fauna.

2 Nominalizations from adjectives

- The judge will decide finally on how long (adjective) the offender remains in jail.
  → The judge will make the final decision on the length (noun) of the offender’s prison sentence.

- The context in which it is exhibited may determine whether or not a painting is powerful.
  → The power of a painting may be determined by the context in which it is exhibited.

3 Nominalizations from adjectives

- The judge will decide finally on how long (adjective) the offender remains in jail.
  → The judge will make the final decision on the length (noun) of the offender’s prison sentence.

- The context in which it is exhibited may determine whether or not a painting is powerful.
  → The power of a painting may be determined by the context in which it is exhibited.

4.1 test yourself

Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning as the first. Use one noun in each space.

1. It is essential to communicate regularly but briefly with the sales force in the field.
   Regular but brief ___________ with the sales force in the field is essential.

2. Local authorities preserved a wide area of land from being developed, and this allowed them to create a park.
   The ___________ of a wide area of land from ___________ allowed local authorities to create a park.

3. The presenter questioned whether some of the research into prime numbers was relevant.
   The ___________ of some of the research into prime numbers was questioned by the presenter.

4. Orton supports Foster, who predicts slow economic growth led by the service sector.
   Orton supports Foster in his ___________ of slow economic growth led by the service sector.

5. The political situation must be stable before it is possible for poverty in this part of Africa to be eliminated.
   The ___________ of the political situation is a pre-condition for the ___________ of poverty in this part of Africa.

TIP Sometimes you can use a completely different noun to express the same meaning as a verb or adjective.

- Parts of the country’s infrastructure have been getting better in the last two or three years.
  → There have been some improvements in the country’s infrastructure in the last two or three years.

TIP Here are some more adjective-noun partnerships: beneficial/benefit, coherent/coherence, enormous/enormity, intelligent/intelligence, logical/logic, relevant/relevance, secure/security, similar/similarity, stable/stability.
4.2 Using it ... and there ...

4.2 study

Academic writing often involves the balanced discussion of contrasting viewpoints and ideas. It is useful, therefore, to be able to use structures that do not commit you personally to a claim or statement. *It* and *there* + *be* both offer ways of starting sentences in a way which makes them appear more objective.

1. *It* ...

Starting the example below with *It* ... (sometimes called the ‘empty’ or ‘preparatory’ subject) allows the writer to avoid using the more direct and personal *I cannot foresee* ... It also avoids the clumsy impersonal structure *To foresee* a significant improvement in the levels of poverty in Liberia while the fighting continues is difficult, which places a long clause between the subject (*To foresee*) and its verb and complement (is difficult).

- It is difficult to foresee a significant improvement in the levels of poverty in Liberia while the fighting continues.

The passive structure below is a less direct way of saying *Educationalists have argued* ... and it also gives more prominence to the argument itself (which is the important thing) rather than to the people doing the arguing.

- It has been argued by educationalists that a greater number of male teachers at primary school level might improve the performance of young boys in the classroom.

2. *There* ...

*There* introduces something, or says that it exists.

- There was some evidence in the survey that British people still feel closer links with the USA than with their fellow citizens in the European Union.
- There are a number of conclusions that can be drawn from this comparative study of hospital procedure.

The example above offers a less direct and personal alternative to *We can draw a number of conclusions* ... but note that you could also say *A number of conclusions can be drawn from* ...

3. *It* .../ *There* ... + modal verb

With *it* ... and *there* ... it is possible to use a modal verb or *seems/appears*.

- It must be remembered that Italy as an entity did not exist until 1861.
- There seems to have been a disagreement over the exact date of the discovery.

**Tip** Writing can appear less personal when words such as *essay, report, evidence, research*, etc. are used as the subject of your sentence (*This report focuses on ...; The evidence available suggests that* ...).

4.2 test yourself

Complete each sentence with *it* or *there*.

1. ________ is a persuasive argument for adopting any traffic scheme that reduces town centre congestion.
2. ________ should be recognized that raising interest rates may not solve the inflationary pressure.
3. ________ may be preferable for the newspaper industry to regulate itself.
4. ________ was a difference of opinion within the team about the design of the logo.
5. ________ may be a case for rewarding drivers who regularly take colleagues to work.
6. ________ seems to be difficult for larger travel companies to gain the positive feedback that their smaller competitors enjoy.

4.3 Using *I, we, you* and *one*

4.3 study

1. Using *I* and *we*

Although it is best to take a generally impersonal approach to your writing, there are times when it may be appropriate to use *I* and *we*.

When outlining your approach to a subject, either as a single or joint author or presenter.

- *First, I will summarize the arguments in support of political sanctions.*
- *In the middle section of our report, we have advocated the use of certain types of pesticide.*
- *In a presentation, I will finish my presentation by considering the ways in which some animals migrate to survive.*
When commenting on your own position in verb phrases such as I (would) accept, I (would) argue, I believe, I (would) consider, I (would) propose, I (would) suggest, I (would) suppose, I (would) think.

- (in a presentation) I would suggest that if the recommendations of the Clarkson report were put into practice, we might see a reduction in the number of night-time accidents in rural villages.
- In conclusion, I consider it unlikely that we will see a fundamental change in the attitude of most British citizens to immigration, which is why a basic level of equal rights legislation will always be required.

When people are presenting themselves as members of a wider community.

- (lecturer) We know that viruses can adapt to survive. (We = everyone in this lecture hall)
- (in a presentation) We are already facing a water crisis in some parts of the world. (We = humanity)

2 Using you and one

You and one can both be used to refer to people in general. You is informal and is more common in spoken academic English. One is quite formal.

- (in a seminar) If you make any kind of commercial or public enquiry, you'll notice how the organization will use almost any strategy to encourage you to find the answer via their website rather than by phone.
- The process of teaching one's own subject can provide new insights into it.

TIP In spoken academic English, you can use a less formal style, but you should still avoid colloquialisms and slang such as kids, stuff, cute, dead easy, etc.

- (in a presentation) How come there are why are there so few women in the House of Commons?

TIP In written English, it is normally better to avoid contractions such as didn't, won't, we'll, wouldn't, etc.

- A company that won't will not invest properly in research and development is likely to be overtaken by its competitors.

4.3 test yourself

Complete each sentence with one of the phrases in the box.

I would suggest that we have agree we
I understand

1. I would suggest that many scientific discoveries are made by a process of trial and error.
2. As a researcher, I am aware that another academic may be investigating exactly the same area.
3. To sum up, we argue that the UK would benefit from encouraging a growth in the culture of philanthropy.
4. We decided that each member of our team will present a separate model of arts funding.
5. I understand your fears, but I also think you are unlikely to find a new energy source with as much potential.
6. I would suggest that there are valid criticisms of this scheme, but, as my last slide shows, the alternatives are all more expensive.

4.4 Formal verbs, nouns and adjectives

4.4 study

Some words have a more formal ‘feel’ to them than others. In the selected examples in this section a less formal, but perfectly acceptable, alternative is given in brackets. It is not necessary to always use the more formal words in academic English, but it is useful to be aware that these distinctions exist. (See also unit 15 Phrasal and prepositional verbs.)

1 Verbs

Many verbs have a more formal alternative.

- Symons argues that there is little point during a time of recession in calling on (asking) the government to support further spending in this area.
- The company's profits exceeded expectations. (The company's profits were greater than expected.)
- The oil tanker incurred/suffered serious damage in the collision. (The oil tanker was seriously damaged in ...)
- In the body of our report, we make reference to (refer to) the significant contribution in this field of Professors Walters and Marlow at Columbia University.
• No self-respecting democracy can sanction (permit/allow) these coercive methods of interrogation.

• In his inaugural address Barack Obama spoke of (talked about) the long political journey he had made.

• None of these important matters were addressed (were covered/dealt with) in the work carried out by the Granger inquiry.

TIP Other more formal verbs include acquire/procure (obtain), assist (help), conduct (carry out), demonstrate (show), dispose of (get rid of), entail (necessitate/require), examine/study (take a look at), investigate (look into), omit (leave out), treat (present/discuss), write of (write about).

2 Nouns

Sometimes more formal nouns are particularly appropriate in law or politics. A spouse (husband or wife) and a sibling (brother or sister), for example, are useful in being gender neutral. A dwelling means ‘a place where someone lives’ without having to specify whether it is a house or flat, etc., and premises means ‘a building’ or ‘buildings’, whether it is an office or a shop, etc. Politicians sometimes make pledges rather than promises, and countries may use an embargo rather than a ban to prevent some form of trade.

• Several of the dwellings were condemned as unfit for human habitation.

• An embargo has been placed on all oil supplies destined for the main cities.

• Under the current law, a spouse must wait for two years after separation, before beginning divorce proceedings.

• Police conducted a thorough search of the premises, but no drugs were found.

• The government has made a pledge to review the composition of select committees. (Or The government has pledged to review ...)

3 Adjectives

Some adjectives have more formal partners.

• Relations between Pakistan and India, rarely cordial (friendly) at the best of times, have recently worsened.

• The design of the new hospital, with its light-filled social areas, is exemplary (ideal).

• Mistakes were made by the negotiating team, but these were described by the government as negligible (minor).

• The sole (only) reason for delaying the launch of the new domestic heating system appears to have been a desire to avoid the summer period, when few people are as concerned with cold weather problems.

TIP Other more formal adjectives include characteristic (typical), correct (right) and incorrect (wrong), final (last), justifiable (fair), problematic (difficult), overwhelming (very powerful) and substantial (large).

TIP In spoken and written English, there is a tendency to avoid emotive language that shows a personal attitude in the words themselves, such as mob instead of crowd or adjectives like appalling, disgusting, wonderful, etc.

• It is shameful that refugees in genuine fear for their lives in their home countries are being turned away by immigration services.

→ We need to question the moral values that underpin any immigration service that turns away refugees in genuine fear for their lives in their home countries.

4.4 test yourself

Replace each underlined word or phrase with one of the more formal words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.

administered catalogued advisable occupation occasions deteriorated unacceptable accelerated negotiations

1 Medical reports suggested that the trapped miners’ physical condition got worse rapidly after the first week.

2 The suspect refused to reveal his job to the police.

3 The enquiry concluded that the drugs given to the patients by hospital staff were inappropriate.

4 The construction company claimed it had informed employees that the wearing of goggles was a good idea.

5 There were at least two times when secret talks were held between the British and Irish Governments.

6 The pace of change within the industry has speeded up over the past decade.

7 The inquiry panel listed the number of accidents that had occurred on that part of the motorway.

8 The opposition argued that the government’s cuts to housing benefit were very bad.
4.5 study

This final section covers the more formal versions of a small group of words and phrases; Latin expressions in current use; and some formal negative expressions.

1 In this list, words or phrases that are more formal come first: albeit (although); in excess of (over/above/more than); in sum (in short/briefly); principally/primarily/predominantly (mainly); somewhat (slightly); virtually (almost).

- There is a distinct, albeit minor, trend for furniture retail outlets to offer customers free refreshments while they browse.
- ATMs generally do not permit withdrawals in excess of £500.
- Retail turnover, in the period leading up to Christmas, has been somewhat lower than expected.

(TIP Using the words former, latter, and respectively to make references to other parts of a text is also a characteristic of formal English. (See unit 20 Cohesion page 176 for further information.)

2 It is not advisable to use Latin phrases simply to make your writing sound more academic, but the following expressions can prove useful: bona fide (in good faith); caveat (a warning); de facto (in reality, but not officially); in situ (in its original location); inter alia (among other things); per capita (per head/for each person); pro rata (in proportion); quid pro quo (something in return for a service/favour); sine qua non (an essential pre-condition); status quo (things as they are); vice versa (reversing the order of things just mentioned). You may wish to check if your department has a policy on the use of Latin phrases.

- Classroom research carried out in situ (i.e. in the classroom) can present its own difficulties.
- Wilkins argues that companies should take a more flexible approach to employees who request a temporary reduction in their workload for a pro rata loss of salary.
- It is vital that charities seeking commercial sponsorship understand the details of the quid pro quo element of such an engagement.
- Mitcham argues that the UK will have to do business with the rebel force, now that it has formed the de facto government of the country.

3 The negative expressions no (instead of not any), little (instead of not much), and few (replacing not many), all tend to sound more formal, and can be used instead of contractions.

- (There aren't any) There are no easy solutions available to the problem of drug abuse among teenagers.
- (Not many) Few doctors would argue with a system that could reduce the number of inappropriate patient consultations.

(See also unit 7 Connectors, page 067 for an explanation of the structure not only ... but also, which has a similar, formal feel to it.)

(TIP In formal English, we tend to limit our use of the terms etc., and so on, and so forth, replacing them with more precise phrases (The building of ready-to-rent apartments requires the installation of washing machines, fridges etc. and other domestic appliances).

4.5 test yourself

Replace each underlined word or phrase with a more formal alternative.

1 There isn't much hope that the opera company will find a sponsor for its innovative programme.
2 Three of the seven species identified by the team in 1972 have almost disappeared.
3 Michaels describes an ideal business environment in which confidence strengthens the economy and the other way round.
4 A new member entering an established group of friends can upset the existing situation.
5 Brian Talbot is mainly an expert in hydraulics.
6 Nutritionists generally agree that there aren't any fast-track solutions to sustainable weight loss.
A OK, so we've got our research done. The experiment's finished and we know what happened. Well, mostly, we do. What are we going to write about it?

B Let's start with the conclusion. What we found out. The results.

C Yeah. The whole point was looking for what made the bacteria reproduce more quickly.

B Quickly and successfully. And we found the right level of warmth, 35 degrees, which was what we set out to do. So we've got to say something like 'the optimum temperature'.

A Remember, it wasn't just the temperature. We had all those different coloured lights, too.

C I know, and they didn't work out so well. So why don't we say we looked at two variables, and one gave us clear results and the other didn't?

B But they were clear results - they were just negative ones. Nothing happened.

C You're right, but how can we word that in our report?

set out namely optimum to examine growth rates growing conditions with regard to were exposed to two separate variables a strong correlation the same growth no matter what in the range of showed less influence on

The experiment 1__________2__________the 3__________4__________the temperature and the colour of light that the samples 5__________. The team discovered that there was 6__________between high bacterial 7__________and a temperature 8__________35 to 36 degrees. The samples kept a degree below this 9__________or above this 10__________produced about 20% less growth, and those held below 30 degrees produced no growth at all. Experimentation with a second variable 11__________the growth rates. 12__________the colour of light that the bacteria were exposed to, 13__________resulted.

B Rewrite the text as one continuous paragraph, following the instructions in brackets. Use more formal language where possible.

• We are burning fossil fuels all the time, and the world's weather is behaving in ways that are more and more changeable. We can try to show the link between these two things, but the connection is not always simple. (use one sentence instead of two, start with the phrase Demonstrating the link ..., and use the noun patterns instead of the verb phrase is behaving in ways)

• Most experts believe that burning these fuels is the main reason for the weather changing. (use the former and the latter)

• But scientific proof depends on specialists measuring the data accurately, and analysing it in very difficult ways. (use the nouns measurement and analysis)

• People can make mistakes in the way that they conduct these studies, and some scientists disagree with most of their colleagues, even though the evidence is growing. (start with the word Mistakes ... and use the word conduct as a noun)
C Circle the most appropriate formal phrase (a–c) to replace the underlined phrases in the text about people kidnapped in a war zone.

The abduction of children and women from Kobo District has been a feature of conflict between ethnic groups for the past decade. A man presented a paper at the recent conference on refugees and people who have been internally displaced. He focused mainly on discussion of temporary care for abducted women and children who have been rescued from their abductors and are waiting for their families to be traced; improvement of communication between agencies; the recording of so-called ‘spontaneous returns’, when the newly rescued choose to transport themselves to their original villages; and exploration of traditional ‘reconciliation and return’ mechanisms as an alternative to the theoretical model that exists at the moment used by agencies that work internationally.

1 a group ethnic conflict
   b inter-ethnic conflict
   c ethnicity conflict

2 a a paper was presented by someone
   b a presentation occurred
   c a paper was presented

3 a internally displaced personalities
   b internally displaced persons
   c displaced internally persons

4 a it focused on mainly
   b there was a main focus on
   c the main focus was on

5 a cross-agencies communication
   b agency communication
   c cross-agency communication

6 a the documentation of
   b the documentary of
   c the documentation

7 a the momentary theoretical model
   b the theoretical model in existence
   c the existing theoretical model

8 a internationally working agencies
   b international agencies
   c agencies of international work

D In each pair of sentences, which sentence is more formal? Underline the formal features.

1 a You can interpret the meaning and the substance of corporate social responsibility (CSR) in many ways.
   b There exist many interpretations of both the meaning and the substance of corporate social responsibility (CSR).

2 a The disproportionate youthfulness of many developing countries contrasts with the ageing demographics of Europe.
   b Many developing countries have a disproportionately young population, compared to the ageing populations of Europe.

3 a The confusion between the voluntary sector and unpaid work is further compounded by the conflation of similar yet distinct working patterns.
   b The voluntary sector and unpaid work are often confused, and this is made worse when similar yet distinct working patterns are conflated.

4 a This fails to account for women returning to work after maternity leave, and it assumes that caring responsibilities are solely a female concern.
   b Not only does this fail to account for women returning to work after maternity leave, but it also assumes that caring responsibilities are solely a female concern.

E Write 150–250 words about the changing patterns of transportation in your city or country. Use the different strategies covered in unit 4 to make your paragraph as formal as is reasonable.
Relative clauses allow you to include additional information within a sentence in a clear and economical way. They are normally divided into two types: defining relative clauses, where the information ‘defines’ a noun, and is therefore essential to the meaning; and non-defining relative clauses, where the information may be useful, but the sentence would still be meaningful without it.

- The National Carbon Company was the first manufacturer which recognized the potential of the dry cell battery. (defining)
- Claude Monet, who spent much of his childhood in Le Havre, was a founder of French impressionist painting. (non-defining)

The relative pronouns who and whom (for people), and which (for things) can represent the subject or the object of a defining clause.

- Yves Saint Laurent has been described as the designer who changed the world of women’s fashion. (= He (subject) changed the world...)
- The methods which we use to learn languages vary from country to country. (= We use them (object) to...)

This unit begins by focusing on the two types of relative clause, then looks at the different relative pronouns you can use, and finishes by describing how participles work in relative clauses.

Read the adapted extract from a textbook on organization types and look at the relative clauses (1–4). Then answer the questions (a–c).

The first organization which we will consider has a strong leader and a spider web structure: power and influence radiate out from the centre, so what matters is staying close to the hub, where decisions are taken, and staying close to the individual who matters most. Growing beyond a certain size is problematic: the leader who created a success, possibly from nothing, is typically reluctant to let go.

(Adapted from Understanding Organisations by Charles B. Handy)

a How is relative clause 1 different from relative clause 2?

b Which relative pronouns (in bold) could be replaced by the word that? Would it make any difference to the meaning or style?

c Which relative pronoun could be removed from the text altogether? Would it make any difference to the meaning or style?

Suggested answers: see page 194
5.1 Defining relative clauses

The relative pronouns *which* and *who* can be replaced with *that* in defining relative clauses, and can be left out altogether when they relate to the object of the sentence.

- *The first car which I bought was a Honda.*
  - *The first car that I bought was a Honda.*
  - *The first car I bought was a Honda.*

However, in academic English, *who* is rarely changed to *that* when it relates to the subject.

- *Yves Saint Laurent has been described as the designer who (not that) changed the world of women’s fashion.*

**Who and which tend to be left out altogether only when they are followed by a pronoun.**

- *The scientists who/that the Americans hired were originally from Germany.*
  - *The methods we use to learn languages vary from country to country.*

**flip Remember not to repeat the object in a defining relative clause.**

- *We’re going to finish the presentation with the slide (that) I showed you at the beginning.*

5.2 Non-defining relative clauses

Non-defining clauses are separated from the rest of the sentence by commas.

- *The stethoscope, which René Laennec invented in 1816, is used for listening to the body’s internal sounds.*

The relative pronouns *who* or *which* can refer to the object of the clause as above, or the subject.

- *Frank Lloyd Wright, who designed the Guggenheim Museum in New York, was recognized in 1991 by the American Institute of Architects as ‘the greatest American architect of all time’.*

**flip It may help to think of the commas in non-defining relative clauses as ‘protecting’ the relative pronouns from being changed to *that* or being left out.**

Non-defining relative clauses do not always have to come in the middle of the sentence; they can come at the end, too.

- *A great deal has been written about the naturalist Joy Adamson, who famously raised a lion cub herself.*

A relative clause beginning with *which* at the end of a sentence can be useful in referring to a whole idea, rather than a specific noun.

- *In his speeches Martin Luther King often referred to the hope of building a new America, which inspired many of the audience to take up active politics for the first time. (which = King’s reference to the hope of building a new America)*

5.1 test yourself

**Rewrite the sentences to include a defining relative clause, using the information in brackets.**

1. Some doubts were raised about the quality of the questionnaire. (The group used it in the research.)
2. The shoe company was based in Dundee. (It made the largest profits.)
3. The folding bicycle is selling very well. (They designed it at their workshop in York.)
4. Hewitt questioned the experience of the software engineers. (Wentworth plc recruited them.)
5. The director later wrote a memoir. (He pioneered the tracking shot.)
6. The region is crossed by two main roads. (They require substantial repairs.)

5.2 test yourself

**Rewrite the sentences to include a non-defining relative clause, using the information in brackets.**

1. In a case of gross misconduct an employer may fire an employee immediately. (This includes theft.)
2. Bill Grayson handed his small pharmaceutical business to his daughter. (She transformed it into a multinational corporation.)
3. Turkey has land borders with eight countries. (This has frequently led to a kind of diplomatic balancing act.)
4. Vegetable oils have seen recent volatility in their spot price. (They are traded as commodities.)
5. Barbara Hepworth created *Single Form* for the United Nations building in New York. (Critics regarded her as a key Modernist sculptor.)
5.3 Whom and whose

5.3 study

1 Whom is the object form of who. Because it sounds rather formal, it tends to be replaced in defining clauses by that, or to be left out completely (see section 5.1).
   • The teachers (whom/that) we interviewed all spoke well of the new staff development scheme.

In non-defining clauses, you can use who rather than whom to refer to the object, except in very formal styles.
   • The CEO, who we met at lunch, was optimistic about the company’s long-term prospects.

You must use whom, however, after prepositions.
   • Radovan Karadžić stated at his tribunal hearings that Madeleine Albright was the diplomat with whom he had held secret talks.

2 Whose + noun in defining and non-defining clauses indicates possession both by people and things (such as companies, government agencies, committees, etc. and books, plays, films, etc.).
   • A relative whose blood type is compatible may be able to donate a kidney if they wish to.
   • Buyers International is one of the companies whose opposition to the deal is well known.

An alternative to whose, when writing about things (not people), is the preposition of + which.
   • Alice Miller wrote an important book on the psychology of childhood, whose title/the title of which, The Drama of Being a Child, indicates the strength of her views on our early years.
   • An international conference on intellectual copyright, the details of which have not yet been announced, is likely to be held later this year.

5.3 test yourself

Complete each sentence with one or two words. If no words are necessary, write —.

1 New employees should have a mentor from ____________ they can obtain advice.
2 Coca-Cola is an example of a company ____________ brand has undeniably passed the worldwide recognition test.
3 All of the scientists ____________ she met expressed their doubts over the viability of cold fusion as an energy source.
4 The government has proposed an amendment to the legislation, the aim ____________ is to restrict the number of local radio stations that can be owned by one person.
5 Sharon Olwyn, ____________ the Prime Minister promoted to the Cabinet, resigned in protest over the issue in 2005.
6 All the staff on patrol at the reserve are in radio contact with the head keeper, ____________ they make hourly reports.

5.4 In which, from which, to whom, etc.

5.4 study

In spoken English, relative clauses may end with a preposition.
   • And here is a photo of the project team and the local villagers who we worked with.

In academic writing such prepositions are normally placed before the relative pronoun.
   • Langham (2009) argues that Alan Turing is the mathematician to whom computer science owes the greatest debt.
   • HM Prison Maze is the prison from which thirty-eight prisoners escaped on 25 September 1983.
   • Simón Bolívar, in whose honour statues have been erected in many of the towns and cities of Venezuela, played a significant role in the Latin American struggle for independence.

Notice how a determiner such as many, each, some, neither, etc. or a number, percentage, etc. can be placed before of + relative pronoun.
   • There are hundreds of small businesses in the area, many of which are interdependent.
   • The company has a staff of 1,200, 60% of whom work on a part-time basis.

048 05 Relative clauses
Two prepositional phrases that you will find useful are the way in which and the extent to which.

- Most observers agree that the way in which Nelson Mandela handled his former political enemies after he took up the presidency of South Africa was exemplary. (This avoids two that-clauses: ... agree that the way that Nelson Mandela ...)
- No one can be sure of the extent to which the search for water in parts of Africa will become the key source of conflict over the next fifty years.

Two other useful expressions are at which point and in which case.

- A fight may break out amongst the players, at which point the referee is entitled to bring the game to a close. (This avoids writing ... the players, and at this point, the referee ... or ... the players, and if this happens, the referee ...)
- There is a risk that water levels in the reservoir may fall again, in which case the local authorities will have to consider a system of rationing.

5.4 test yourself

A Complete each sentence with one of the phrases in the box. Two phrases are not needed.

from whom with whom three of which in which to which at which neither of which from whose

1 Several charities have criticized Westminster Council for the way it has cut funding to the shelter for homeless people in Charing Cross.
2 If these types of fault occur in a bridge, there are two options for repair, cheap.
3 The rebel leaders the negotiations were conducted seemed unwilling to make any concessions.
4 A break-even analysis determines point sales cover the production costs.
5 John Loudon McAdam was a Scottish engineer name the road-surfacing material tarmac (or tarmacadam) is derived.
6 The hospital then carried out a routine check of the emergency generators, were found to be defective.

B Use a preposition + relative pronoun [e.g. with whom] to join the two pieces of information below into one sentence.

1 a jury may have to listen to several expert witnesses/some of them may seem to contradict each other
2 the oil leak may destroy the local fish stocks/the coastal villages depend on them
3 the newspaper chain was inherited by Forster’s daughter/one of her first actions was to sell two of the titles
4 several of the paintings were owned by Massine/Picasso collaborated with him in a number of projects
5 the Pianura Padana is the plain in northern Italy/the river Po flows through it to the Adriatic sea
6 the fear is that thousands of local people will begin to move out of the area/in this case refugee camps will need to be established

5.5 study

It may sometimes be more economical to use where, when, or why instead of a preposition + which.

1 Where is common in academic English and often follows the words place (or region, country, etc.), area, situation, point, and case.
- Assisted suicide is an area of medical care in which many doctors disagree.
  = Assisted suicide is an area of medical care where many doctors disagree.
- A situation may occur where the police need to ‘kettle’ or contain a group of demonstrators.
- Negotiations often reach a point where one side feels it has conceded too much ground.
- India is a continent where we are likely to see substantial economic growth over the next fifteen years.

TIP In relative clauses with situation, point or case + where, where is sometimes replaced by when (without a change in meaning).
- Zoologists have described cases when a shark will attack a vulnerable member of its own species.
When is used with dates, and with words such as time, day, year, occasion, moment, and period.

- In 2004, when the Sumatra-Andaman earthquake occurred, few expected it to trigger a tsunami of such overwhelming power.
- The recession began at a time when many British businesses were hoping for a period of extended growth.
- On the day when the agreement was signed, many people felt that the country would enter into a new period of long-term stability.

Why is used with the word reason, sometimes in the phrase there is no reason why.

- What are the major reasons why we are losing so much biodiversity?
- There is no reason why green technology cannot be competitive.

The thing(s) which/that... can be replaced with what.

- Most of the delegates seemed to disagree with what the minister said. (= the things that the minister said)
- What we expect from a good business leader is a sense of long-term vision for the company.

Replace the underlined phrases with where, when, why, or what.

1. Some start-up businesses seem set on entering areas in which there is already a great deal of competition.
2. There are several reasons for which Jaguar Land Rover may close its factory at Castle Bromwich.
3. Mergers are situations in which staff naturally feel that their jobs may be at risk.
4. Deciding the things that should be included in a questionnaire is sometimes a difficult task.
5. Staff cuts at the charity became necessary after a period in which corporate and individual donations both fell.
6. There are several cities in which exhibitions of surrealist art have been particularly successful.
7. The English Civil War can be said to have started on 22 August 1642, the day on which Charles I raised his standard at Nottingham.
8. The thing that the marchers were hoping for was a swing in public opinion against the government’s proposals.

B Complete the sentences with where, when, why, or what.

1. March is the month _______ moles begin to appear above ground, having spent much of the winter lining their tunnels with fallen leaves.
2. Grier (2008) suggests that in the early 1990s, the company car phenomenon was the reason _______ prices in the UK car business stayed consistently higher than those in the rest of Europe.
3. Tonga is the only island nation in the region _______ formal colonization has never taken place.
4. Experts noticed that the video footage had been edited at precisely the point _______ government tanks arrived at the demonstration.
5. Patients who do not respond to hypnotherapy may fear being unable to cope with _______ will emerge during a session under hypnosis.
6. In the sentencing of rioters, most judges felt that there was no reason _______ maximum penalties should not be applied.
7. Ronald Reagan’s election to the White House occurred at a moment _______ the credibility of the American presidency was at a particularly low point, according to Shah (2010).
8. The aim of the conference was to consider _______ makes one local community work better than its neighbour.

Participles in relative clauses

5.6 study

In defining relative clauses, you may be able to improve your sentences in terms of economy and flow by using a past participle or a present participle form of the verb instead of a relative pronoun + verb. This structure is called a ‘participle clause’ or a ‘reduced relative clause’.

These past participles are commonly used in participle clauses: based, caused, concerned, given, involved, made, obtained, produced, required, taken, and used.

- The team studied the results (which were) produced by the survey for some weeks before publishing their conclusions.
- According to the police, all the people (who were) involved in the incident were interviewed at the time.
• Statements (which are) taken from witnesses many weeks after the event are likely to be unreliable.
• It is reasonable to question the accuracy of information (which is) obtained through torture.

These present participles are commonly used in participle clauses: arising, concerning, consisting, containing, involving, relating, requiring, resulting, and using.
• The newspaper argued that it was publishing a story concerning the public interest. (= which concerned the public interest)
• All the data relating to individuals is destroyed after the results of the survey are established. (= which relates to individuals ...)
• A search involving more than a thousand police officers was unable to find the missing girl. (= A search which involved ...)

Note that present participles can't be used if the relative pronoun represents the object.
• The methods using which we use to learn languages vary from country to country.

**TIP** Reduced relative clauses are also used with adjectives such as available, necessary, possible, responsible, and suitable: The official who was responsible for leaking the document later resigned.

5.6 test yourself

Complete each sentence with the present or past participle of one of the verbs in the box.

consist arise use base cause give

1 A key issue ___________ from the report is the extent to which politicians put undue pressure on civil servants.
2 The speech on race ___________ by Barack Obama in Philadelphia is considered to be one of his best.
3 Peterson describes some of the innovative techniques ___________ by Monet to capture light in his paintings.
4 In his article, Ichikawa discusses five recent films ___________ on computer games.
5 Paradoxes was an art installation ___________ of eight individual paintings and sculptures.
6 Coughs ___________ by viral infections usually disappear within a few days.
A In the text about economic development, match the beginning of each sentence with the correct ending.

1 Zuleika Gubbins (2007) proposes three models of economic development,
2 The country that follows a Spring model has a strong kick-off point, usually
3 Growing beyond a certain size is problematic: the industry
4 The Summer model is that of a healthy ecosystem, with many sectors to the economy,
5 The implication is that even if one of these contracts, others will be in a position to expand, although in a recession,
6 The Autumn model is one of long investment
7 An Autumnal economy might consist of several large industries
8 The difficulty with Autumn, of course, is that Winter,
9 In other words, even industries
10 It would be intriguing to speculate

a providing substantial results.
b one which starts with the growth of one particular industry.
c which is finally bearing fruit.
d which are long-standing and highly successful will not last forever, so economic planners need to have their eye on the next cycle of growth.
e which she names Spring, Summer, and Autumn.
f what a Winter economy might look like.
g a season of hardship, is around the corner.
h each of which is interdependent on the others.
i when the whole economy shrinks, this may not hold true.
j which led the way may not be able to make a successful transition.

B Complete the text about encyclopedias by adding relative pronouns to all the sentences except two.

1 One obvious difference between the two models is the speed with they can update information. 2 However, it would be incorrect to assume that Britannica, used to wait 25 years between editions, failed to move with the times. 3 As early as the 1930s, in a time businesses around the world had to reshape or go bankrupt, it moved to a system of continuously updating its articles. 4 The limitations of the printing process meant that the article writers, are experts in their fields, have to wait years to see the fruits of their labours reach the shelves. 5 It is clear that an online encyclopedia - the most ground-breaking of is Wikipedia - is much better placed to serve readers’ needs, not least by correcting its errors swiftly and keeping up to date with advances in knowledge. 6 This shift in how the public accesses and uses information was behind Britannica’s 2012 decision to stop producing printed books, and focus all of its attention on digital delivery.

7 Wikipedia is also free to access, makes it more attractive than spending real money on the full set of paper or CD encyclopedias, or on access to their online versions. 8 However, this radical openness can also be perceived as a weakness – because anyone can update its pages, Wikipedia is regularly accused of inaccuracies. 9 There have been examples of journalists, told to write a profile of a public figure, copy material from Wikipedia, including errors about the individual in question. 10 What should be included can also be controversial: obscure topics would never grace the pages of the Encyclopædia Britannica find a space on Wikipedia.
C Cross out the phrases in italic if they are not needed, or replace them with the present participle form of the verb.

1 Up to 90% of the indigenous population of the Americas died from diseases such as smallpox and syphilis, which were introduced by the European explorers and colonizers.

2 The new generation of smart phones which contain a substitute for coltan will be released next year.

3 South African safaris are dominated by local businesses, which are owned and operated by people who live in the area.

4 The pollutants that are generated by internal combustion engines have a major effect on the breathability of city air.

5 The agricultural techniques that require the most external inputs tend to require more machinery as well.

6 Vegetable oils which are traded internationally as commodities have seen volatility in the spot price more reminiscent of petroleum trading.

7 Ecosystems which use certain animals to carry out a particular function may be destroyed if that species becomes extinct.

8 Political scandals which involve governments can often be impenetrable to foreign observers.

D Add a defining or non-defining relative clause to each sentence, using the information in brackets.

1 Klein writes about adbusters and culture jammers. (Adbusters and culture jammers add graffiti to billboards or create their own fake advertisements.)

2 British banks were bailed out by the government. (The government considered their rescue as the least worst option.)

3 The inquiry reported on the mechanical failures. (The failures had caused the accident.)

4 According to a report from Goldman Sachs, the so-called ‘next eleven’ countries have now been identified. (These countries have the potential to become the world’s largest economies.)

5 The two factories boosted their production. (They introduced a flexi-time policy.)

6 The polar bear is threatened in its habitat because of global warming and rising sea levels. (The polar bear is a vulnerable species.)

E Complete the text about the lack of support for the UK manufacturing industry with whose, or a preposition and whose, which, or whom.

There has been strong criticism of UK business leaders for the way ________ they have given precedence in the last 30 years to marketing and promotion over manufacturing. Clements and Walter (2009), ________ opinion engineering and the production of goods are now seen as second-rate pursuits, believe, however, that it is not too late to change the commercial and industrial landscape. They argue that, as the recession deepens, a new breed of manufacturers may be the people ________ we turn for economic solutions. Howton (2010), ________ articles in the Observer complain about the extent ________ government initiatives fail to ease the bureaucratic barriers faced by start-up factories, agrees. She suggests that the manufacturing entrepreneurs ________ UK business leaders could learn their lesson have yet to be given their voice in the financial press.

F Write 150–250 words about a profession that might attract a student who is looking for job security and financial reward, describing the type of work involved. Use at least six relative clauses.
Read the text and then note separately the three facts and two opinions that it contains.

Data evaluated by the Office for National Statistics indicates that the number of adoptions in England and Wales has fallen by 4.1% in the past two years. In the same period, statistics confirm that the number of couples applying to adopt has risen. Unless the number of children in care has fallen significantly, it seems plausible that the process of adopting in the UK currently presents an unreasonable barrier to parents who would like to start or enlarge a family in this way. Government figures also show a rise in the number of UK adoptions of children from developing countries (known as ‘intercountry adoption’). Most people examining this evidence would agree that changes in the way that UK adoption agencies operate are overdue.

Suggested answers: see page 195
Key ‘fact’ words

1. Study

This section presents a selection of words and phrases that frequently collocate with five key ‘fact’ words: data, evidence, fact(s), information, and statistics.

1. Data

This is an uncountable noun. It can be used with some or with a piece/an item of.

VERB + NOUN: We can access, acquire, assess, capture, collate, collect, compile, enter, evaluate, examine, gather, obtain, process, retrieve, store data

NOUN + VERB: data can demonstrate, indicate, (dis)prove, show something or that ...

ADJECTIVES: data can be (in)accurate, current, empirical, financial, out of date, preliminary, recent, relevant

2. Evidence

This is an uncountable noun. It can be used with some or with a piece/an item of.

VERB + NOUN: We can assemble, attack, challenge, collect, consider, demand, dispute, disregard, evaluate, examine, falsify, gather, interpret, present, provide, question, quote, reject, scrutinize, suppress, throw doubt on, weigh up, withhold evidence

NOUN + VERB: evidence can conflict with, point to, support something; evidence can confirm, demonstrate, disprove, indicate, prove, show something or that ...

ADJECTIVES: evidence can be abundant, ample, circumstantial, compelling, (in)conclusive, conflicting, damaging, documentary, extensive, flawed (containing a mistake), flimsy (= weak), fresh, growing, hard, incontestable, insufficient, irreducible, mounting (= growing), new, overwhelming, reliable, solid, widespread

3. Fact(s)

VERB + NOUN: We can check, distort, establish, examine, explain, ignore, (mis)interpret, misrepresent, present fact(s); we can emphasize the fact that ...

NOUN + VERB: fact(s) can disprove, prove, show, suggest something or that ...; fact(s) can emerge

ADJECTIVES: basic, disturbing, hard, interesting, little-known, relevant, salient, undeniable, well-known fact(s)

4. Information

This is an uncountable noun. It can be used with some or with a piece/an item of.

VERB + NOUN: We can absorb, access, demand, disclose, disseminate, exchange, gather, have access to, leak, obtain, record, release, share, store, supply, update, withhold information

ADJECTIVES: information can be (in)accurate, additional, (un)biased, confidential, detailed, extensive, important, latest, misleading, out of date, public, relevant, sensitive, timely, up to date, valuable, vital

5. Statistics

This is normally a plural noun, which can be used with some.

VERB + NOUN: We can analyse, compile, gather, issue, produce, release statistics

NOUN + VERB: statistics demonstrate, disprove, indicate, reveal, show, prove, suggest that ...; support the idea, etc. that ...

ADJECTIVES: statistics can be important, (in)accurate, (ir)relevant, latest, misleading, out of date, revealing, reliable, surprising, up to date

TIP As an academic subject, statistics takes a singular verb (Statistics is the study of large quantities of information), and a singular form of the noun is also possible (A poll has produced the surprising statistic that as many as 32% of voters make up their minds in the half hour before they actually vote).
6.1 test yourself

Complete the words in the sentences.

1. Fre evidence de ___ that some non-avian dinosaurs were able to swim.

2. The company is ___ ___ ___ ___ to their shareholders that indicated slight but significant growth in three new markets.

3. After the team had ___ ___ ___ ___ data, it became clear that none of the animals had moved further than 500 metres from the river.

4. Hogue att ___ ___ ___ ___ the evidence in both reports, arguing that it was ___ ___ ___ ___ and inconclusive.

5. When all the ___ ___ ___ facts had ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ it was apparent that human error rather than mechanical failure was responsible for the accident.

6. If Howells had not ___ ___ ___ ___ information to the press, the mismanagement of these funds might have continued for years.

6.2 Talking about facts and figures

6.2 study

1 Referring to visual information

Some useful phrases to be aware of when referring to diagrams and other visual information such as graphs, charts, and tables are:

• This diagram shows/illustrates/displays ...

• As can be seen from/in the diagram, ...

• It can be seen/from/in the diagram that ...

• We can see/from/in the diagram that ...

• From the diagram, it may be seen/concluded that ...

• According to the diagram, ...

• As (is) shown in the diagram, ...

• This diagram illustrates the regions that are most affected by drought.

• As can be seen from the diagram, the greatest proportion of American debt is actually owed to the country itself, in the form of government bonds.

• As shown in the diagram, share value rose sharply in 2007, when the merger with Stanleys plc was announced.

2 Describing recent/past trends

There are two useful sentence patterns for describing trends in facts and figures.

a. Present perfect/past simple of be + adjective + noun + in

ADJECTIVES: dramatic, gradual, slight, small, steady, rapid, sharp, steep, sudden

NOUNS: decline, decrease, drop, fall, increase, reduction, rise

• There has been a dramatic reduction recently in the number of loans to small businesses.

• There was a steady rise in the 1990s in UK births to unmarried mothers.

b. Noun + present perfect/past simple of verb such as rise + adverb

VERBS: decline, decrease, drop, fall, grow, increase, rise

ADVERBS: dramatically, gradually, slightly, steadily, rapidly, sharply, steeply, suddenly

• Profits have increased gradually for the electronics company Sheldon plc.

• Leisure spending fell sharply in the last quarter of 2009.

• The price of computers has been dropping steadily for the last ten years.
You can use the following verbs and verb phrases to describe the state of figures or statistics at particular periods:

to peak/reach a peak, to trough/hit a trough,
to remain stable/constant, to stabilize, to level off/out,
to reach a plateau

to fluctuate (= to go up and down)

You can use the superlative form (highest/lowest, etc.) to describe peaks and troughs.

- Birth rates in southern Europe reached their lowest level for six years in 2005.

(You could also write Birth rates ... hit a trough/troughed in 2005 or Birth rates ... hit a six-year low in 2005.)

You can also use expressions describing multiple amounts (two/three, etc. times or the verbs double, treble, quadruple).

- Nearly three times as many Irish citizens work in the construction industry as in agriculture.

- The number of Norwegians with access to high-speed broadband doubled between 2005 and 2006.

(See page 017 in unit 2 Comparing and contrasting for more on comparative and superlative structures.)

3 Making comparisons

Facts and figures for one country, company etc. are often compared with those for others, or with the way they used to be in the past. When talking about amounts, percentages, etc. the preposition by comes between a verb and the number, and of comes between a noun and a number.

- Economic growth in the UK fell/declined by 0.2% in the second quarter of 2010.

- Spain enjoyed an increase/rise of 10% in its tourist trade in 2007.

Structures with more (or higher/lower, etc.) ... than or ... as ... as .... are useful.

- The Labour Party gained 3% more of the public vote than the Conservatives in the local elections of 2009.

- Manufacturing productivity was not nearly as high in France as it was in Germany in 2009.

6.2 test yourself

Correct each sentence by adding one of the words in the box.

constant highest tripled risen
from by in of

1 Clifton plc increased its exports to North America in 2008.

2 In 2009 Portugal suffered a decline in its gross export figures.

3 The number of graduates obtaining employment within six months of leaving university reached its level for a decade in 2007.

4 It can be seen in the pie chart that Brazil produces twice as much coffee as Colombia.

5 There has been a gradual increase in births by Caesarean section in the USA over the past thirty years.

6 According to the British Antarctic Survey, mean annual temperatures on the Antarctic Peninsula have rapidly since records began fifty years ago.

7 Since its abolition, UK public support for the restoration of the death penalty has remained at around 65%.

8 UK sales of Freedom Food products between 2007 and 2009 to reach £122 million.
Using others’ opinions

6.3 study

The views of other writers can be used as evidence in your writing. You can paraphrase (see unit 16 Paraphrasing), or you can make a direct quotation.

As a rule, quotations should be short and not overused within your writing. Your own university or college should be able to give you a style guide on the technical aspects of citation (different systems are preferred in different institutions), but here are some words and phrases for introducing the opinion of another author.

1 Using reporting verbs such as comment, point out, observe, state, suggest, write

As (name) + reporting verb
(Name) + reporting verb + that...
• As Grover observed, ‘Several categories of question can be distinguished in market research questionnaires’ (2007: 45).
• Grover points out that several categories...

Note that verbs such as point out, observe, etc. can be used in the past, present and the present perfect tense.

2 Using nouns such as view or opinion

The view/opinion of (Brown) is that...
(Brown)’s opinion/view is that...
In (Brown)’s view/opinion, ...
• Steele’s view is that, ‘The popular reaction to a controversial new building often turns quite quickly from dislike to a kind of affectionate respect’ (2004: 62).

3 Using according to (Brown)

• According to Wooller, ‘The temperature at which a material will ignite is, of course, of primary concern in the construction industry’ (Wooller: 78).

6.3 test yourself

Reorder the words in brackets to make correct sentences. Add punctuation where necessary.

1 (Escher according to) It should be possible to stabilize this chemical reaction for commercial exploitation.
2 (has out that Stevens pointed) Mexican politics are little understood outside the region.
3 (maintains Nikura as) Some species of insect may die out before they have even been recorded.
4 (that Bostock’s is view) Crime statistics are frequently manipulated to support political arguments.
5 (opinion Metstrom’s in) Corporate lawsuits may have no other purpose than to delay competitor launches.

6.4 Giving your own opinion

6.4 study

1 In writing

If you do not give a reference for an idea, the reader will normally understand that it is your view. There is therefore little need in academic writing to use expressions such as in my opinion or I think. If you want to use a phrase, you could consider expressions such as:
It is likely/probable that ...
It seems plausible that ...
The evidence indicates/suggests that ...
It can/could (in fact) be argued that ...
One possible view is that ...
On balance, it seems that ...
One of the main arguments in favour of (a change in the law) is ...
• It could be argued that the internet is forcing us to engage with new concepts of copyright.

If you feel that your opinion is widely shared, you could write:
It is generally accepted that ...
Most people would agree that ...
• It is generally accepted that there is a strong case for encouraging consumers to become more responsible in the way that they dispose of rubbish and unwanted goods.
In speaking
Opinions in seminars, tutorials, and presentations are expressed in a less formal style. Here is some language that you might find useful, followed by a short dialogue featuring some of the phrases.

a Giving an opinion
I think...
I feel that...
I'd say that...
It seems to me that...
What I think/believe is...

b Giving an opinion more emphatically
It seems obvious to me that...
As far as I'm concerned...

c Giving an opinion more formally
I believe...
I take the view that...
It is my view that...

d Disagreeing
Yes, but (on the other hand)...
I see what you mean, but...
I agree (with you) to some extent, but...
But what about the fact that...
Are you sure?
That may be so, but...

e Disagreeing more emphatically
I disagree. In my view, ...
I can't agree with that. In my view, ...
I don't agree, I'm afraid. In my view, ...

f Agreeing
I think you're right.
That's right/true.
I think so, too.
I agree.

g Agreeing more emphatically
(That's) my view, exactly.
(That's) absolutely right/true.
That's exactly what I think.

(See also unit 10 Arguing and persuading for ways of presenting and supporting your arguments, and units 8 Being emphatic and 14 Hedging for showing the strength of your opinion.)

6.4 test yourself
Complete each sentence with the correct form of one of the verbs in the box.
indicate may agree concern
seem believe.

1 As far as I'm the UK needs to ask itself why it locks so many of its citizens up.
2 Most people would that technological innovation is the key to long-term manufacturing success.
3 On balance, it that there is a desire in the general public to see the benefits system reformed.
4 Well, you have a point, but what would a group live on if all its music could be downloaded for free?
5 What I is that the National Health Service would actually benefit from more competition.
6 The evidence that molecular water exists across the surface of the moon.
A Rewrite the sentences, using the words in brackets.

1 Spot prices for metals did not rise or fall in this period despite the turbulence in the oil and textile markets. (stable)
2 Visitor numbers at the Sizewell education centre increased by 14% in the period 2007–9. (increase – noun)
3 It can be imagined that modern medicine will continue to extend human life. (plausible)
4 The sales totals for fine art at the auction house were at their highest level for twenty years in 2009. (peak – noun)
5 There was a slight fall in house prices in Cumbria in the first half of 2012. (slightly)
6 ‘What you say may be relevant, but I disagree with your order of priority.’ (a point)
7 Payday loan companies reported that there was three times as much demand for their services during the Christmas period in 2012. (trebled)
8 The number of complaints to the BBC over offensive language rose steeply throughout the 1990s. (rise – noun)

B A group of students is discussing a statistics project on undergraduate sleeping patterns. Complete the conversation.

A It seems to me, just from looking at the amount of data we’ve collected, that we must have some information to present.
B That’s right, but selecting the most facts may not be so easy. Has anyone actually had a chance to their data?
C Well, I was statistics on the average number of hours slept in different years, and the evidence I’ve got that second years sleep the . If my is accurate, the amount of time you sleep increases % from year one to year two. But then afterwards, there’s a drop % when you get into the third year.
A That’s a reasonably between years two and three, isn’t it? It must be stress, mustn’t it, when you go into the final year?
B Yes, that be so, but it could also be that you simply have to put in more hours of work.
C I . But why do people sleep % in the second year? Can anyone that fact?
A Well, I think is that in your first year, you’re still a bit unsettled. You’ve got a lot of new information to, haven’t you? By the time you get to the second year, you’re more relaxed perhaps?
B Good point. I think you’re . It’s a hypothesis, anyway, isn’t it, and there’s some evidence to it. OK, what else have we got?

AWL GLOSSARY

- select: to choose something from a group of things, usually according to a system
- stress: pressure or worry caused by the problems in somebody’s life
- final: being or happening at the end of a series of events, actions, statements, etc.
- hypothesis: an idea or explanation of something that is based on a few known facts but that has not yet been proved to be true or correct.
First identify adjectives, verbs, and phrasal verbs that do not sound appropriate in the sentences. Then replace them with the words in the box.

Companies that keep back information from health and safety inspectors may be fined.

Everett (2008) maintains that the evidence does not assist the conclusions drawn by Follett in his report.

Iqbal (2010) argues that there is no tough evidence to support Kozyrev's claims.

Punctual information from the event organizers would have allowed the police to control the situation.

The committee insisted that the Department of Work and Pensions should make statistics that the public could understand.

The documentary revealed some scary facts about young people involved in online gambling.

The first data released by the panel suggests that the oilfield has very limited supplies.

The facts did not become visible until two key witnesses were summoned to give evidence.

There was wide evidence that some of the officials judging the contest had been bribed.

Users found that the new computer system did not allow them to bring back data quickly enough.

Circle the most appropriate option.

As the Knight Foundation notices/observes/sees (2007), there continues to be very little right/truthful/accurate information on identifying and addressing the needs of girls who have dropped out of education, despite the fact that there has been a cautious/gradual/graded increase in their number over the past ten years, as can be seen/viewed/regarded in Table 1.2 below. The one exception to this is a report which got/gathered/saved evidence on the situation of elder children of large families who were kept at home to help with younger siblings. Statistics support/express/show that several partial solutions could be adopted, including, for example, the payment of tuition fees and provision of school uniforms. The foundation's thought is/opinion shows/opinion is that the distribution of direct financial assistance to families should also be carefully considered.

Look at the two graphs. For each graph, write at least two factual statements, and then interpret the statistics by giving your own opinion. Finally, make a comment on the period from 1971 to 2001, based on the information in both graphs.
Look at the sentences about Sri Lanka. First, underline the key words (excluding and) that connect together the ideas in each sentence — words that could be used for the same purpose in a text on something completely different. Then put the words into three groups, according to whether they add information, express reason and result, or express time.

1. Sri Lanka was colonized first by the Portuguese and the Dutch, and then by the British.
2. Due to its location, Sri Lanka is a strategic naval link between West and South-East Asia.
3. As strong winds meet the mountain slopes of the island’s Central Highlands, monsoon rains are unloaded on the slopes and south-western parts of Sri Lanka.
4. Not only does Sri Lanka export tea, coffee, and cinnamon, but it also produces some of the most valuable woods such as mahogany and teak.
5. Sri Lanka has been called ‘the pearl of the Indian Ocean’ because of its astonishing natural beauty.
6. The island’s national parks support elephants, deer, and peacocks, as well as preserving the habitats of storks, pelicans, and spoonbills.

Suggested answers: see page 196

The effective use of connectors such as also, so, because, while, and in spite of gives a logical flow to your writing, linking ideas within and between sentences. Connectors normally come at the beginning or in the middle of sentences.

- In spite of the poor performance of the economy, the government managed to retain a small majority in the general election.
- Some doctors oppose the planned changes to the health service because they believe that the new system will require them to spend too much time managing resources rather than treating patients.

In this unit, a wide range of useful and common connectors is divided into seven types.

### Unit contents

- 1 Expressing reasons and results page 063
- 2 Expressing purpose page 064
- 3 Expressing contrast page 064
- 4 Expressing time page 065
- 5 Expressing additional information page 067
- 6 Using participles to connect ideas page 067
- 7 Giving examples and rephrasing page 068

Other units that deal with connectors are unit 2 Comparing and contrasting, unit 5 Relative clauses, unit 8 Being emphatic, unit 12 Talking about cause and effect, unit 17 Conditionals, and unit 20 Cohesion.

Tip Connectors are also known as ‘connectives’, ‘linking’ or ‘connecting’ words, and ‘conjunctions’.
Expressing reasons and results

7.1 study

1 Reasons: because (of), as, since, due to, owing to

Words like because, as, and since are used to give reasons for actions and events. Because is normally placed in the middle of the sentence, where it tends to introduce new or important information.

- The company website failed because visitors found it too difficult to navigate.

As and since often come at the beginning of sentences, introducing a reason that may be known already, and leaving the more important information for the end of the sentence.

- The first fire occurred on a weekend. As/Since the office was empty at the time, there were no injuries.

Before nouns you can use because of or, particularly at the beginning of sentences, due to and owing to.

- The car was recalled because of a design fault in its braking system.

Owing to/Due to the recession, most retailers have recorded a sharp downturn in quarterly profits.

2 Results: as a result, consequently, therefore

As a result, consequently, and therefore all have the same meaning. They are used to introduce the results of actions, decisions, etc.

- The government was hoping that listeners would switch from analogue to digital radio well in advance of the deadline of 2012. As a result/Consequently/Therefore, a series of advertisements was planned to highlight the advantages of digital transmission.

- Sales rapidly declined and as a result/consequently/therefore Bailey Brothers was forced to close its factories.

Note that it is also possible to place consequently and therefore in the middle of sentences. In the example above, you could write: ... the deadline of 2012. A series of advertisements was consequently/therefore planned ...

See unit 12 Cause and effect for more examples of as a result, consequently, and therefore.

7.1 test yourself

A Complete each sentence with one or two words.

1 Rises in the price of oil cause inflation and, as ____________, there is upwards pressure on pay.

2 Due ___________ the increase in rents, many of the area’s tenants are being forced to move out.

3 Older information is stored offsite ___________ of a lack of space within the main office.

4 A small business might not have an HR department; the owner may ___________ have to take care of personnel issues.

5 Internet marketing can automatically measure its own success ___________ websites provide convenient access data.

6 Owing to ___________ that the first few performances attracted very small audiences, the show was cancelled at the end of its first week.
Rewrite the information as one sentence, using the connecting word(s) in brackets.
1. The pressure of water was very great. The dam broke. (so ... that)
2. The nuclear facility was damaged by the tsunami. The local area had to be evacuated. (for this reason)
3. Most of the bridges in the region have a very strong structure. They can survive serious earthquakes. (such)
4. The business had made a late surge in sales. The redundancy programme was cancelled. (since)
5. Her first novel was very successful. She immediately gave up her job. (such)
6. There were many complaints. The company withdrew the product. (so ... that)

You can use so that ..., often with a modal verb such as can, could, will or would, to replace any of these structures with no change in meaning. Note that the subject needs to be restated and can change after so that.

- We will need to launch the product by October in order to gain an edge on our competitors.
  = We will need to launch the product by October so that we can gain an edge on our competitors.
- I'll finish my presentation by 10.45 so that you'll be able to start the meeting at 11.00.

When using in order to when there is a change of subject, for goes before the subject.
- I'll finish my presentation by 10.45 in order for you to be able to start the meeting at 11.00.

7.2 Expressing purpose

7.2 study

You can use all of the following structures to express purpose: to + infinitive, in order (not) to + infinitive, so as (not) to + infinitive, and so (that) + clause.

To + infinitive can be used in the middle of a sentence, and also, in spoken English, at the beginning. In written English, however, in order (not) to is preferred at the beginning of a sentence.

- The expedition was equipped with tools to build bridges across the smaller rivers.
- To demonstrate the decline in the rate of these major illnesses, I'm going to show you two graphs.
- In order to understand the causes of the infection, a team of scientists began a series of laboratory tests.

In order (not) to and so as (not) to are often used in spoken and written English as more formal and emphatic connectors than to. So as not to is less common.

- We need to develop a new product in order to extend our market reach. (= ... so as to extend ...)
- You will need to wear a mask and gloves in order not to contaminate the evidence. (= so as not to contaminate ...)

7.2 test yourself

Correct each sentence by adding one word.

1. Paper files need to be organized and labelled so staff can find what they need easily.
2. Moresby has taught two chimpanzees sign language in to communicate with them.
3. Meerkats use a special type of call to let other members of the group know that a predator is nearby.
4. In order to demonstrate the safety of a new car, a number of tests are carried out.
5. The machinery was switched off in order to mechanics to repair a number of minor faults.
6. The team had to carry out their observation with caution so as to disturb the nesting birds.

7.3 Expressing contrast

7.3 study

1. But, although, even though, though

Although and even though link ideas that seem to contrast with each other. They are both more emphatic than but.

- The team carried out a series of experiments, but they were unable to isolate the genetic material.
- Although/Even though the company has expanded, it hasn’t yet increased its profit margin.
- Our staff is having difficulty with the new computer program, although/even though they have received extensive training.
In written English, though is normally only used in the middle of a sentence. In spoken English though can go at the beginning, middle, or end of a sentence. When it goes at the end, the two contrasting ideas occur in separate sentences.

- Strindberg is mainly known as a playwright, though he also produced a number of innovative paintings.

Though I'm enjoying my course, it's hard work.

= I'm enjoying my course, though it's hard work.

= I'm enjoying my course. It's hard work, though.

**In spite of, despite**

In spite of and despite are similar in meaning and position (beginning or middle of a sentence) to although/even though/though, but the grammar is different. You can use them with a noun/pronoun or-ing form of a verb.

- Aaron Brothers is on track to break even despite/in spite of making losses in the first quarter.

- Despite/In spite of the evidence presented by expert scientists, some commentators still question the existence of global warming.

However, you can make them act in the same way as although by adding the fact that.

- In spite of the fact that/Although he was already profoundly deaf, Beethoven continued to compose.

- The company made an overall profit despite the fact that sales fell sharply in the autumn.

**However, while/whereas**

However is useful at the beginning or the end of a sentence in writing or formal speaking to present an argument against something.

- The Dictionary of the English Language was not Samuel Johnson's only major work, however. More than twenty-five years after it appeared, for example, Johnson published the six-volume Lives of the Great Poets.

- The UK has certainly built more roads. However, it is the train system that has a greater need for new investment.

Note that it is also possible to place however in the middle of a sentence. In the example above, you could write The UK has certainly built more roads. It is the train system, however, that has ...

While and whereas are both rather formal, and are often used for making comparisons.

- While/Whereas NATO was created as an alliance against Communist power, the UN was established to keep the peace between nations.

See unit 2 Comparing and contrasting for words and phrases for expressing contrast, including dissimilar, differ, difference, in contrast to, and on the contrary.

**7.3 test yourself**

Circle the correct option.

1 In spite of/Although we doubled our order from the wholesaler, we still ran out of supplies.

2 Official attendance figures for the protest stand at 5,000. It is clear, whereas/however, that the true figure is much higher.

3 Despite/Even though the product winning design awards, few people seemed to know about it.

4 Several economists have recommended a cut in interest rates, however/though this may cause inflation.

5 While/However children clearly incur medical costs to the state, the care of the oldest members of the community is considerably more expensive.

6 A number of breach of copyright cases have been brought to court. Although/Despite this, the amount of illegal online copying seems to be rising.

7 The interest rate on UK government bonds is 2.2% even though/whereas the rate for French bonds currently stands at 3.2%.

8 Some people refuse to accept that global warming is a threat to our wellbeing, in spite of/however the scientific evidence.

**7.4 Expressing time**

**7.4 study**

1 **Time words and phrases**

The time words when, whenever, while, before, after, until, as, as soon as, once, by the time, by/in + date, and since come at the beginning or in the middle of a sentence.

- Whenever there is excess supply in a market, we expect to see prices falling.

- Van Gogh painted many of his masterpieces while he was living at Arles in Provence.

- As soon as the strength of the bridge has been tested, we can begin planning the opening ceremony.
In sentences referring to the future with two clauses you must use a present, not a future, tense after the time words.

- **We will try to set up some meetings when we will get to New York tomorrow morning.**
- **As the public will leave the museum, they will be asked to make a small contribution to its upkeep.**

Note that when the word *since* expresses time (rather than a reason, see page 063), you will normally have to use a present perfect tense before it.

- **This hospital has been inspected five times since it was opened in 1994.**

### 2 Sequencing events

You can use a number of words to order information by time. Some of the most common are: first(ly), second(ly), etc., then, next, after that, at the same time, finally/lastly.

- **First**, you start the engine. **Then/Next** you press the accelerator. **Then/Next**, you press the clutch pedal with your left foot, and hold it fully down. **After that**, you move the gear lever into first gear, and let the clutch pedal up until you hear the engine noise change slightly. **This change means that you are at the biting point. Finally**, after checking that it is safe to move, you release the handbrake and, **at the same time**, let the clutch pedal come up a little more. **The vehicle will begin to move off.**

### 3 Other words and phrases

*In the meantime* (which is common in spoken English) and *meanwhile* both mean ‘while something else is happening’. *Afterwards* and subsequently mean ‘after that’ and eventually means ‘after a longer period of time’.

- **Jeff will now prepare the room for his presentation. In the meantime, shall we take a coffee break?**
- **Caroline Carman became the Marketing Director in 2005, and the CEO shortly afterwards, overseeing the merger with Stapleton plc. Subsequently, she was appointed as a non-executive director of several charities. Eventually, on retirement, she began a second career as an author and management guru.**

### 7.4 test yourself

#### A Circle the correct option.

1. The engineering team continued to test the engine **by the time/until** they found the fault.
2. We will have a question-and-answer session **before** we finish/will finish.
3. The government **received/has received** six offers since the centre was turned over to the private sector.
4. Elcron’s sales figures declined in the UK during the second quarter. **Subsequently/Meanwhile**, export income for the same period rose dramatically.
5. The construction of the new museum was **eventually/afterwards** completed in 2009.
6. When the new wing of the hospital **will be/is** opened, it will provide bed space for 300 additional patients.

#### B Complete the text, using one of the words or the phrase in the box in each space. One word/phrase is not needed.

- 1. **In the meantime**, the wood chips are mixed with water and acid. 2. **Then/Next** they are heated and crushed to a heavy pulp. 3. **After that**, the wood pulp is cleaned, and, at the **same time**, chemically bleached to whiten it. 4. **Finally**, it is passed through rollers to flatten it, producing sheets of wet paper. 5. **Then/Next** the sheets are dried to make the finished paper.
Expressing additional information

7.5 study

1 Apart from and, the commonest words which express additional information are also, as well (as), and too.

The most frequent of these in writing is also.

• We will discuss the decline in Britain's manufacturing base, and we will also consider some of the measures the government is taking to arrest this decline.

As well and too are normally used at the end of sentences in spoken English.

• Although most of my presentation will focus on English cathedrals, I'll discuss one or two examples from France as well/too.

The phrases as well as and in addition to are followed by the -ing form of a verb or by a noun.

• As well as In addition to eating smaller fish, the tiger shark has been known to consume weaker members of its own family.

• Borrow and Wilson sells antique furniture as well as/in addition to rare and first edition books.

2 These other connectors all have the same basic meaning, and can add emphasis and variety to your writing: in addition, moreover, furthermore, what is more, not only... (but) also.

• Learners of second languages often have to fit classes around their full-time jobs. In addition/Moreover/Furthermore/What is more, they may be required to show evidence of their progress by taking exams.

• Fridtjof Nansen was not only an explorer and scientist, but also a renowned humanitarian.

In order to give greater emphasis, you can begin your sentence with not only ... If you do this, you need to invert (= change the order of) subject and verb and, if there is no auxiliary verb (be, have, will, etc.) present, you must use a form of do.

• Not only was Fridtjof Nansen an explorer and scientist, but also a renowned humanitarian.

Or ... (but) he was also a ...

• Not only succeeded Nansen did Nansen succeed in crossing Greenland from east to west, (but) he also managed to gather information on the Inuits.

(See page 076 in unit 8 Being emphatic for more information on emphatic inversion.)

7.5 test yourself

Rewrite the sentences, following the instructions in brackets.

1 Charles I lost the Battle of Naseby, and was also forced to give up his crown. (start with As well as ...)

2 The company was declared bankrupt, and the CEO was imprisoned for fraud. (use moreover and write two sentences)

3 Edison patented many new inventions, and he also developed systems for the mass distribution of electricity. (start with Not only ...)

4 The University of Nottingham has its main site in the UK, and campuses in Semenyih, Malaysia and in Ningbo, China. (start with In addition to its ...)

5 The centre's research will increase our understanding of the brain, and it may also help to fight diseases such as cerebral palsy. (start with Not only ...)

6 The National Theatre's production of Hamlet ran for two years in the West End, and it toured in India, Australia, and Canada, winning several awards. (use what is more and write two sentences)

Using participles to connect ideas

7.6 study

For economy, and to maintain the flow of your sentences, you can use participle clauses to link two ideas that have the same subject.

• Lincoln’s Electricals needed to expand abroad to maintain its market share. It bought a small factory outside Paris.

  → Needing to expand abroad to maintain its market share, Lincoln’s Electricals bought a small factory outside Paris.

• Lab workers began their tests, hoping that they would find the source of the food poisoning by the weekend.

The perfect participle is used for completed actions.

• Having read out a statement, the Chief Superintendent invited questions from journalists.
You can use a past participle to replace a passive verb.

- *Penicillin was discovered in 1929. It provided a cure for many serious diseases.* → Discovered in 1929, penicillin provided a cure for many serious diseases.
- *Written around 1600, Hamlet became Shakespeare’s most famous tragedy.*

Present participles can replace subject + main verb after the time words *after, before, since,* and *while.*

- *After investigating (= after they had investigated) the causes of the accident, flight engineers recommended withdrawing the remaining Concorde from service.*
- *You should talk to the tutor before changing (= before you change) your course again.*
- *Since leaving (= since they left) college, 20% of graduates have been unable to find work.*
- *While travelling (= while he was travelling) with the British navy on the ship HMS Surprise, the naturalist Maturin was able to collect rare species of wild plants.*

If the meaning is clear, you can also replace connecting words such as *because,* *so,* and *therefore* with a participle.

- *Not being (= Because it isn’t) far from the centre of the city, the museum attracts many visitors.*
- *The new model of bank opens on a Sunday, making (= so it makes) it easier for customers to visit.*
- *A video link may be set up in court for vulnerable witnesses such as children, preventing them (= and therefore they are prevented) from having to give evidence in person.*

### 7.6 test yourself

Rewrite the sentences, using the present, past, or perfect participle of the underlined verb.

1. The Democrats needed to regain California, so they launched a series of aggressive TV ads.
2. Before he began his expeditions, Amundsen always made meticulous preparations.
3. Hans Blix and his team were refused access to the nuclear facility, so they had to return to their hotel.
4. Because Professor Ancram had worked through the night, she was able to announce her results before the midday deadline.
5. After they had exploited known reserves around the world, oil companies began to look to the Arctic for new sources of petroleum.
6. The bridge rises automatically on the approach of tall ships, and therefore allows them to pass safely through.

### 7.7 Giving examples and rephrasing

#### 7.7 study

Some connecting words and phrases may be useful to you in indicating that the next part of the text will give an example, an explanation, a paraphrase, or a summary.

1. You can use for example, for instance, e.g., and such as to introduce an example or examples. For example, it is more common than for instance; e.g. tends to be used for a series of short examples.
   - *Grierson plc made many attempts to enter the American market. For example, it acquired a small mail order company in Wisconsin in 2009.*
   - *Another solution is to digitize information, and give coded access to those who need it. This would mean, for example, that the sales team would have access to all the information they might need while on the road contacting clients.*
   - *One can save files on a physical object such as a hard drive or on a memory stick, or one can save them on a server hosted elsewhere.*
   - *Micronutrients (e.g. chromium, iodine, and zinc) are found in such small quantities in the body that their presence may need to be detected by spectrographic methods.*

2. That is to say, i.e., in other words, and namely are sometimes used to introduce a definition, paraphrase or a particular example.
   - *Many countries depend on primary industries, that is to say, industries that take directly from the earth or sea.*
   - *The kangaroo is a marsupial, i.e. an animal that suckles its young in a pouch on the mother’s belly.*
   - *Cars contribute to, and are symbolic of, what has come to be called the ‘obesogenic’ environment we now find ourselves in. In other words, society and our cities are now shaped in a way that makes us likely to become fat.*
   - *We will look at four management models, and we will then examine how they fit, or fail to fit, one organization, namely a university.*
• In brief, to sum up, and in conclusion can be used to introduce restatements in summarized form.
• (in a presentation) ... and these are no more than a few examples of the airborne pollution that now afflicts the mega-cities we have allowed to develop.
• We are, in brief, poisoning the very air that sustains our urban lives.
• In conclusion, it seems clear that in times of recession a significant proportion of investors will revert to traditionally safer holdings such as gold.

7.7 test yourself

Circle the correct option.

1. The first works of many writers, that is to say/such as D. H. Lawrence and James Joyce, derive almost entirely from the experience of their own early lives.

2. The list price, i.e./e.g. the price of an article as listed by the manufacturer, may be subject to discount by the retailer.

3. Some peoples, for example/in other words, the French, are renowned for the quality of their restaurants.

4. An individual has two options when confronted with a problematic situation, for instance/namely to change the situation, or to change themselves so that the situation becomes tolerable.

5. Namely/To sum up, authenticating paintings has become a much more reliable process, but can perhaps never be perfected.
07 Challenge yourself

A Complete the text, using the connectors in the box.

but consequently in brief in other words namely since subsequently that is to say

Legal tourism, 1_________, the practice of bringing a case to court in whatever jurisdiction is deemed most favourable, has increased markedly over the past ten years. It is particularly noticeable in two areas of law, 2_________ divorce and libel.

Although a couple may both be citizens of a certain country, and may meet and marry and 3_________ live in that country, there is little to stop the aggrieved party (4_________, the spouse who wants the divorce) from initiating legal proceedings wherever that person thinks the case is most likely to succeed. International legal disputes tend to be expensive, 5_________ in the case of very rich people (or, as the jargon has it, 'high-net-worth individuals'), the gamble can prove worthwhile.

6_________ the laws surrounding marriage break-up vary widely around the world, some lawyers and their wealthy clients shop around. English divorce laws are perceived to favour the less wealthy spouse, usually the wife, and 7_________ the English courts are seeing more and more divorces in which neither party has a strong connection to England. 8_________, the system is being abused.

B Correct the underlined phrases if necessary in this description of African safaris. Some phrases are correct.

1Due to the steep drop in the numbers of big game (i.e. elephant, rhino, lion), hunt organizers had to take drastic action in the 1960s and 1970s.

2Since local extinctions gathered pace, they saw their livelihoods at risk. In order to preserve the habitat, they pressed for legal changes, such that the establishment of national parks. Meanwhile as the decline in big game hunting came the increase in non-lethal pursuits. The purpose of these journeys was to track and shoot the animals, but no longer with rifles. These 'camera safaris' began as an organized activity in Kenya and South Africa. As 2010 the industry was valued globally at hundreds of millions of dollars. This branch of eco-tourism, carried on mostly at the level of small-scale businesses, has larger political ramifications in that governments and local authorities may choose to support it, for example, by building up the infrastructure, providing financial encouragement, producing tourist material, and so on.
C Match the beginning of each sentence with the correct ending.
1. Before the discovery of antibiotics, ___
2. As soon as these naturally occurring compounds had been isolated in the lab, ___
3. At first, this was difficult, ___
4. Eventually, the correct protocols were established, ___
   a. because competing varieties contaminated the samples under investigation.
   b. scientists attempted to produce them to order.
   c. simple infections killed untold thousands of people a year.
   d. so the commercial process speeded up.

   compound [a substance formed by a chemical reaction of two or more elements in fixed amounts relative to each other.]
   isolate [to separate a single substance, cell, etc. from others so that you can study it]
   protocol [a plan for performing a scientific experiment or medical treatment]
   establish [to start or create an organization, a system, etc. that is meant to last for a long time]
   investigation [a scientific or academic examination of the facts of a subject or problem]

D Match the beginning of each sentence with the correct ending.
1. After the first antibiotic compound proved effective at treating a human illness, ___
2. The discovery and development of these drugs took place ___
3. In addition to funding new weapons technology, ___
4. As a result, when war broke out, army doctors were able to use antibiotics to treat battlefield injuries, ___
5. Penicillin, for instance, was widely used, ___
6. Moreover, it was well tolerated (that is, few patients had a negative reaction to it); ___
   a. as it killed many types of bacteria.
   b. as well as infections acquired off-duty.
   c. by the time its drawbacks were known, the war was over.
   d. many countries wished to support biomedical research with military applications.
   e. other scientists redoubled their investigative efforts.
   f. while Europe was gearing up for World War II.

E Correct the connectors. There is one mistake in each numbered sentence. Do not change any punctuation.
1. Information needs to be recorded and stored safely, as well as all who need it have access to it in a timely fashion.  
2. The organization's old paperwork is a valuable historical resource and, as our offices are small and our history long, we do not have the space to keep it all.  
3. We have whereas taken steps to store it offsite.  
4. In this way the documents are fairly accessible, however they do not take up room in the office.

07 Challenge yourself
Circle the correct option (a–d) to complete the six short texts.

One of the quirks of the MegaCorp employment process is that existing
employees are encouraged to act up,1 ___ to perform roles on a temporary basis
at a level slightly more senior than their experience and qualifications would
normally allow. An employee may do a job ably for months, if not years.
2 , when the position is formally advertised and filled, that worker may well be
passed over. Until that process began, the employee had had a reasonable level of
job satisfaction.3 ___ the permanent member of staff is appointed, the long-term
employee may have become resentful towards the organization.4 ___, they may
leave, and in the meantime their productivity is likely to suffer.

The choice is apparent: either the two partners demarcate the sides of the business
entirely (5 __ one deals with suppliers and the other with customers), or they find
ways of sharing more than the minimum of information. When a micro-enterprise
hires its first employee, the lines of communication triple: 6 ___ what previously
existed, we must factor in A to C, C to A, and also B to C and C to B.

Some householders with ample storage space choose to bulk-buy
their food from out-of-town superstores. Once the costs of driving
there and back are taken into consideration,7 ___, it is not clear that this
represents a real saving.

8 ___ American companies stripmine parts of their own country, they are
subject to criticism and protest. The protesters, 9 ___, are not in the main
calling for the overthrow of the capitalist system – even the terminology
seems dated. Instead, they are attacking one company or one industry, and
trusting to the legal system and public opinion to help win their case.

It is necessary to have watertight proof of wrong-doing 10 ___ firing a staff
member for gross misconduct such as theft, or their dismissal could 11 ___ be
deemed unfair by an industrial tribunal. There also remains the issue of error;
if it turns out that the employee was not, after all, involved in the theft, then
the employer has lost a valuable employee for nothing.12 ___, there is the
bad PR that such a move may generate.

13 ___ multinational agribusiness is thriving, it is difficult for family farmers to
survive. Government subsidy goes to big producers with clout; lobbyists for
meat and dairy ensure that their industries do well, 14 ___ orchards continue
to be dug up and heritage vegetable varieties lost. However, there are
tendencies working against this centralization, 15 ___ the Slow Food campaign,
and the movements for organic produce and free-range animal products, for
traceability and provenance, for farmers’ markets, and for locally-grown food.
Look at the seven categories of connectors covered in unit 7. Try to use at least one from each category in a brief description (100–200 words). Write about, or write the script for a talk about, either the economy of your country or an organization you know well.
**Being emphatic**

**Introduction**

Although academic writing is often characterized by the need to be cautious (see unit 14 Hedging), there are times when, for the sake of argument or clarity, you may want to be emphatic, either in expressing your own point of view, or in representing the emphatic views of others. Being emphatic means stressing the importance of something (often in contrast to another thing or other things) or expressing a strongly-held or extreme view or opinion.

The following techniques for giving emphasis to your ideas are covered in this unit.

1. Using emphatic sentence structures.
   - *What governments and the scientific community need to find in the area of embryonic stem cell research is a compromise that will allow medical advances and public opinion to coexist in relative harmony.*

2. Using emphatic inversions.
   - *Only by increasing its budget will the Serious Fraud Office be able to fight online deception effectively.*

   - *(in a presentation)* In the view of our group, it remains entirely unacceptable for a democratic country to consider torture as one of its intelligence gathering options.

4. Using emphatic expressions.
   - *In Frayling’s view there can be no doubt that child poverty is a significant barrier to educational achievement.*

---

**Unit contents**

1. Emphatic sentence structures page 075
2. Emphatic inversions page 076
3. Emphatic adverbs page 077
4. Emphatic expressions page 078

---

**Read the two texts and underline five differences in the second text. What effect do these changes have?**

For the first time in history, more people live in cities than in the country. This has been true of industrialized countries for a century at least, but now it is also true for the rest of the world. As these conurbations grow ever larger, their transport infrastructures need to keep pace. These days we see cities grinding to a halt too often under the pressure of traffic jams. By stepping back and taking a fresh approach to our transport systems we will be able to ensure that the places where most of us now live can actually function.

For the first time in history, more people live in cities than in the country. In fact, this has been true of industrialized countries for a century at least. Now it is also true for the rest of the world. As these conurbations grow ever larger, it is vital that their transport infrastructures keep pace. What we see too often these days are cities grinding to a halt under the pressure of traffic jams. Only by stepping back and taking a fresh approach to our transport systems will we be able to ensure that the places where most of us now live can actually function.

Suggested answers: see page 198
8.1 Emphatic sentence structures

8.1 study

There are two key ways in which you can restructure your sentences to give greater impact to parts of them.

1. *It + be + relative clause*

By using this structure, you can place a greater emphasis on the first part of your sentence (underlined in the example below).

- *It is the Cabinet that should be the main forum for agreeing policy within the government.*

This sentence might be criticizing a prime minister who took decisions without consulting his or her Cabinet, and is more emphatic than saying *The Cabinet should be the main forum for agreeing policy within the government.*

In the following example, the writer wants to draw attention to Skerritt’s opinion on ‘constant practice’ in language learning.

- *According to Skerritt, it is through constant practice rather than memorization that you ultimately master a second language.*

(Compare with *You ultimately master a second language through constant practice rather than memorization.*)

If you are emphasizing a personal subject, you can replace *that* with *who*.

- *It is only the monarch who can dissolve Parliament under the British constitution.*

(See also unit 5 Relative clauses)

2. *What-clause + be*

With this structure you can place the emphasis on the second part of your sentence (underlined in the example below).

- *What we need is an advertisement that will capture the public’s imagination.*

(Compare with *We need an advertisement that will capture the public’s imagination.*)

Note that additional information that would normally be placed at the beginning or end of a sentence is included between *what* and *be*, and that a plural noun would require the plural form of *be*.

- *What we need in order to succeed are advertisements that will capture the public’s imagination.*

(Compare with *We need advertisements that will capture the public’s imagination in order to succeed.*)

In the example above, the focus is on a noun phrase (*advertisements that ...*). To emphasize a verb phrase (e.g. *gain full security clearance ... below*), the verb *do* can be used, followed by an infinitive, normally without *to*.

- *What a candidate for a post at the UN must do is (to) gain full security clearance before they can proceed.*

Note, however, that you would not normally emphasize a reporting verb (e.g. *assert, think*).

- *What Fonseca does believe is that fictional heroines still tend to be stereotypes more often than their male counterparts.*

**Tip** To emphasize a noun, you can place a reflexive pronoun after it (normally the third person singular *itself* or plural *themselves*).

- *It was found in the report that contact needed to be made with the senior managers themselves before a satisfactory response could be obtained.*

08 Being emphatic 075
8.1 Test yourself

Rewrite each sentence to emphasize the underlined phrase, starting with the word(s) in brackets.

1. A business requires a healthy reserves account for its long-term viability. (What...)
2. The Americans were seeking a fundamental change in the presidential election of 2008. (It was...)
3. The advocates of a traditional encyclopedia contend that its research is more objective than that of Wikipedia. (What...)
4. The police were accused of breaking the law during their investigation. (It is...)
5. None of the focus groups placed priority on the privacy rights of celebrities. (What...)
6. Travellers are generally looking for value for money rather than luxury in an airline operator. (It is...)

8.2 Empathic inversions

If you want to emphasize the negative or limited nature of a situation, you can place certain negative or limiting words or phrases at the beginning of a sentence or a clause.

When you do this, you must invert (= reverse or change) normal word order by placing the auxiliary or modal verb (be, have, will, etc.), if there is one, or a form of do, in front of the subject.

- Rarely has there been a time, argues Patel, when so many demographic and medical changes were occurring simultaneously.
- No sooner did the company report record earnings in 2009, than it sold its factory in Northampton and changed direction completely.

1. Limiting words and phrases: only + -ing, rarely, seldom

By placing these words at the beginning of your sentence or clause you can limit or restrict the action or event, and therefore put emphasis on it.

- Only by holding a referendum will the government be able to resolve this issue.
- Rarely/Seldom do we see a collection of paintings as innovative and wide-ranging as those currently on display at the National Gallery's exhibition 'The Modernists'.

Note that only by is normally followed by will or can. Other prepositional/adverbial phrases are possible after only.

- Only after teaching for twenty years did Hilbrandt turn to composing.

2. Time phrases: hardly... when, no sooner... than, not since/until, at no time, never

By placing these words and phrases at the beginning of your sentence or clause (and using when or than in the middle with the first two structures), you can emphasize the speed or unique nature of an event or action.

- Hardly had the committee reconvened when the chairperson declared that they could proceed no further.
- No sooner did the advertisement appear than it was reported to the Trading Standards Authority. (It is also possible to say No sooner had the advertisement appeared than... without changing the meaning.)
• Not since the Second World War, concludes the report, has air travel experienced the kind of disruption caused by the volcanic ash cloud.
• At no time during the investigation did any of the senior managers offer their resignation.
• Never had pharmaceutical companies seen such a period of growth as the 1980s.

3 Negative phrases: on no account, under no circumstances, neither/nor

By placing these words and phrases at the beginning of your sentence or clause you can emphasize the negative nature of your meaning. Note that on no account and under no circumstances are often followed by should.
• On no account/Under no circumstances should infants younger than six months be vaccinated against yellow fever, according to practitioners.
• The UK had not experienced this level of industrial dispute before, and neither/nor had it prepared itself for the resulting shortage of coal and therefore electricity.

(See page 067 in unit 7 Connectors for more information on the use of not only ... but also.)

8.2 test yourself
Rewrite the sentences, starting with the word[s] in brackets.
1 Prime Minister Eden never appeared to be in control of the Suez crisis. (At no time ...)
2 Business confidence has not been so low since the recession of the early 1990s. (Not since ...)
3 The capital has rarely witnessed such a large protest march. (Rarely ...)
4 The amount of food transportation will decline when people buy more local produce. (Only when ...)
5 Doctors should never be employed without a full check of their qualifications. (Under no circumstances ...)
6 The moment the talks broke down, fighting began once again in the region. (No sooner ...)

8.3 study
Note that most of the adverbs in this section take a mid-position (just after the auxiliary verbs be and have and just before other verbs), but some, such as in fact, undoubtedly, and invariably, can also come first in a sentence, and a few, such as categorically and emphatically, may come after the main verb.

1 Especially, essentially, even, in particular, only, and particularly can all be used to focus attention on particular parts of a sentence, which are underlined in the examples below.
• It is difficult, especially during a recession, for small companies to persuade their banks to lend them money.
• Collins argues that there are essentially two forces that motivate people: self-interest and fear.
• Riverside property in particular needs to be protected against flooding.

2 Actually, indeed, in fact, and of course emphasize that something is true.
• None of the evidence actually confirms that humans suffer injury as a result of regular exposure to these low temperatures.
• The majority of new employees within the civil service are drawn from the ranks of the temporary or contract staff. In fact, the available statistics demonstrate that the most common way to secure a job is to begin as a casual employee.

3 Absolutely, categorically, completely, entirely, utterly, and wholly all share the core meaning of completely. Absolutely is the most flexible, collocating with many adjectives and verbs. Utterly tends to be used when being critical or disapproving of someone or something.
• Angry travellers absolutely refused to wait calmly as the number of cancelled flights increased.
• Craigson denied categorically that he had been involved in insider trading.
• Samson argued that it was utterly irresponsible for local councils to subcontract services to providers with civil court actions against them.

Tip Note that the adverb quite can have the same meaning as the adverbs in 3 above when combined with ungradable adjectives such as absurd, certain, different, false, impossible, right, sure, true, useless, and wrong. (= completely wrong).
• The argument that children from privileged backgrounds are innately more intelligent is quite wrong.
4 Clearly, emphatically, indisputably, obviously, unambiguously, undoubtedly, and unquestionably are used to emphasize that there can be little argument or doubt about the facts, and they should therefore be used with care.
- There are clearly several options when a company is perceived to be failing.
- She was indisputably the best candidate for the job, according to the chairman of the interview panel.
- Undoubtedly, there are still questions to be asked about the siting of nuclear reactors.

5 Invariably and unfailingly share the meaning ‘always’.
- Invariably, consumers in focus groups will express ideas that advertisers had not predicted.

(See also section 8.4 for the use of certainly and definitely to express the idea that there is no doubt.)

**8.4 Empathic expressions**

**8.4 study**

There are a number of expressions that you can use to add emphasis to your own point of view or to describe the emphatic views of others.

1. It is/was + clear/obvious/disputable/inevitable/undeniable that or It is/was + clear/obvious (to someone/something) + that ...

- It was obvious to the panel that the project lacked sustainability.
- It is undeniable that there is an immediate need for improvements in the city's infrastructure.

**Tip** Verbs that present clear evidence (such as demonstrate, prove, reveal, show), especially when used without cautious or tentative language, can sound emphatic by themselves.
- These results demonstrate that the high stress levels produced by sudden loud noises return to normal in a relatively short space of time. (Compare with These results may demonstrate …)

2. It is/was + necessary/imperative/crucial/vital that ...

- As Hoskins points out, it is imperative for small businesses to have good credit with suppliers.
- It was crucial that the fire was stopped before it reached the chemical factories on the outskirts of the city.

**Tip** Some verbs have more emphatic alternatives with a similar meaning (should —► must, state —► assert, ask —► insist/demand, dislike —► detest, criticize —► condemn).
- The solutions that are proposed must include some investment in programmes of education. (Compare with The solutions that are proposed should include …)

3. There is/was/can be + no doubt that ...

- There is no doubt that large sections of the Amazon rainforest will be destroyed within the next five years unless some form of concerted action is taken.
- There was no doubt at the time, according to the accountants that were called in, that the company had to be closed down rapidly to prevent further losses.

---

**8.3 test yourself**

Circle the more appropriate option. In one sentence both options are correct.

1. Bolivia has had to deal with political instability, and absolutely/indeed revolution, in some of the countries that surround it.
2. Only/Completely half of the companies investigated had filed their annual statements with Companies House.
3. Food purchasing habits in the poorest communities are even/completely different from those in affluent areas.
4. Political polls unfailingly/wholly show a decline in the popularity of a new leader after a year in power.
5. The situation in the south of the country is, however, entirely/quite different.
6. Producers argued emphatically/utterly that the new legislation would damage their businesses.
7. Only/Even successful companies can undergo periods where they question their key goals.
8. Categorically/Obviously, confidential information needs to be stored with care.
Note also the expression *without doubt.*

- *It is without doubt the case that surrealism would not have emerged as a movement without the activities of the Dada movement during the First World War.*

**TIP** Expressions using *certain, certainly,* and *definitely* can also express the idea that there is no doubt.

- *Allowing sixteen-year-olds to vote is certain to be a controversial proposal.*
- *There will definitely not be any new investment this year in the city's half-built leisure centre.*

### 8.4 Test Yourself

Complete the sentences, using one word in each space.

1. It ______ clear ______ observers that the peace process cannot be restarted while fighting continues.
2. There ______ certain ______ be a high demand for a cheaper, eco-friendly family car.
3. It ______ vital ______ developing countries continue to submit cases to the International Court of Justice in The Hague.
4. There ______ be ______ doubt, in Fisher’s view, that all reasonable steps to prevent the spread of the disease were taken.
5. It ______ crucial ______ a company facing significant losses to establish and follow a clear action plan.
6. It ______ undeniable ______ some of the evidence collected on the trip was overlooked.
A In the text about volcanic ash, rewrite the phrases in italics to emphasize the words in bold. Use the words [1–6].

One of the by-products, when a volcano erupts, is volcanic ash. As Pieterson (2008) points out, `the ash from a volcano often causes more damage to human life than the heat and fire. He cites the eruption of Mount Pelée on the island of Martinique in 1902; `as soon as the residents of St Pierre had emerged from their houses, believing they were safe, they were enveloped in a cloud of poisonous ash, resulting in 29,000 fatalities.

Dencott (2011) describes the more recent difficulties caused by clouds of volcanic ash. `She focuses on the fine ash that is drawn up into the atmosphere, where it becomes a danger to aircraft. Damage to a plane’s engines can occur quite rapidly when it enters an ash cloud. `A pilot can hope to limit the risk only by decreasing power; any attempt to ‘outfly’ the cloud is likely to worsen the situation.

After the eruptions in Iceland sent volcanic ash into the atmosphere in 2010, the relevant authorities came to the conclusion that `they had to close the airspace over much of Europe, thus preventing commercial flights from taking off. Khan (2011) criticizes this decision, believing that rather than a balanced assessment of the risks, `our health and safety culture makes us overreact in situations such as these.

1 it ... rather than 3 What ... is 5 what ... was
2 no ... than 4 Only ... can 6 it is ... that

B Circle the most appropriate option to complete the text about internet fraud.

As the years pass, there is `certain/definitely/obvious to be an increase in the amount of internet fraud, according to Stapleton (2011), `particularly/actually/indeed in the area of online banking. It is `certain/obvious/crucial to the financial authorities, he explains, that as more transactions are completed electronically, a greater number of criminals will move into this field of activity. `Especially/Indeed/Even, statistics released by the Office of Fair Trading (2012) already indicate a significant rise over the last two quarters in online banking fraud.

It is `obvious/certain/crucial, as Gower and Lutz (2011) maintain, for authorities dealing with online fraud to realize that there are two `even/quite/only distinct tasks required for the fight against this type of illegal activity. The first, they suggest, `clearly/utterly/quite involves a continual updating of expert technical knowledge by the authorities, in order to keep one step ahead of the fraudsters. The second task, however, may be `only/even/quite more important: the patient checking of an almost endless supply of financial data for patterns of abnormal behaviour.

**AWL GLOSSARY**

- **Indicate** to show that something is true or exists
- **Significant** large or important enough to have an effect or to be noticed
- **Task** a piece of work that somebody has to do, especially a hard or unpleasant one
- **Technical** connected with a particular subject and therefore difficult to understand if you do not know about that subject
- **Abnormal** different from what is usual or expected, especially in a way that is worrying, harmful, or not wanted
In the text about people who impersonate doctors, rewrite the phrases in italics, using the introductory words [1–6].

Gray (2007) describes a second type of imposter, which she refers to by the commonly used term ‘fake doctor’. 'She discovered a pattern of behaviour that should act as a warning to health service managers. Typically, these impostors begin their career as support staff in large hospitals. 'Qualifications are seldom required for such posts, as Gray notes. 'They only make their first attempt to act as doctors when they have spent at least six months in these positions.

'However, the behaviour of members of the public and senior staff towards these impostors is the most interesting aspect, according to Gray. 'Without doubt the fake doctor's ability to inspire confidence prevents patients from questioning their medical judgments. And, as far as senior staff are concerned, she cites the case of the imposter Thomas Baxter. 'He was never asked during his two-year period as a hospital doctor to produce proof of his status, an error that Gray can only explain by reference to his self-confident attitude.

1. What
2. Rarely
3. Not until
4. However, it
5. There
6. At no time

In the text about ‘sofa government’, circle the most appropriate options. In two cases more than one option is correct.

According to O'Donnell (2009), it is 'entirely/undoubtedly/invariably the case that the practice of Cabinet decision-making has changed in the last fifteen years. She argues that this is 'even/quite/essentially due to the personal style of Tony Blair, Prime Minister of the United Kingdom from 1997 to 2005. Blair, it seems, was 'absolutely/only/quite convinced that his party’s vision could not succeed unless key decisions were made outside the forum of regular Cabinet meetings.

O'Donnell 'only/in fact/utterly credits Blair with the invention of what has been described as 'sofa government', the process by which major decisions are 'completely/invariably/absolutely taken by a small group of ministers and advisers and then referred to Cabinet for official approval. Constitutional experts may believe this to be 'wholly/even/utterly wrong, as O'Donnell points out, but Blair’s colleague and adviser Mandelson (2010) argues that it was 'necessary/important/inevitable, at least in the early years of government, that new premier Blair would require this form of control. Mandelson goes on to assert that sofa government 'actually/particularly/absolutely produced some of the administration’s greatest policy achievements.

Make the text more emphatic by using some of the language from unit 8.

The electric car should not be dismissed as the vehicle of the future. Despite its low sales, it can be argued that the long-term case for an alternative to the internal combustion engine remains convincing. Petrol prices are rising year on year, and most observers feel that the need to reduce greenhouse gas emissions is still a global priority.

The government should, as environmentalists point out, offer greater incentives to the potential buyers of electric cars. This must include an increase in the number of re-charging points throughout the country, further subsidies on price at the point of purchase, and greater support for the research that could lead to cheaper battery technology. By taking these measures, the government can play its part in creating a system of sustainable public transport.
Passives

Introduction

Read the two versions of the text. Then underline the passive verb forms in the second one. Why do you think the writer decided to use the passive in the second version?

The Chrysler Building is currently the third tallest skyscraper in New York City. William Van Alen designed it in Art Deco style, and building contractors started work in September 1928. They completed the tower less than two years later, after bricklayers had laid nearly four million bricks manually. In 2007, the American Institute of Architects ranked it ninth on the 'List of America's Favorite Architecture'.

The Chrysler Building is currently the third tallest skyscraper in New York City. It was designed in Art Deco style by William Van Alen, and work was started in September 1928. The tower was completed less than two years later, after nearly four million bricks had been laid manually. In 2007, it was ranked ninth on the 'List of America's Favorite Architecture' by the American Institute of Architects.

Suggested answers: see page 199

Verbs can be in the active or the passive voice. When we use the passive voice we begin the sentence with the thing or person being acted on (or being affected by the action) and not with the thing or person carrying out the action (the agent). The subject of a passive sentence would normally be the object of an active sentence. The passive is formed by using a form of be with a past participle. If an agent is mentioned in the sentence, it comes after by.

• Passive: One of the earliest accounts of the Nuremberg trials was written in 1945 by Robert H Jackson, the US Chief Prosecutor.
• Active: Robert H Jackson, the US Chief Prosecutor, wrote one of the earliest accounts of the Nuremberg trials in 1945.

The passive is fairly common in academic writing, where an impersonal or neutral tone is often preferred, and where the emphasis may be on results, events or processes, rather than agents.

• When the vaccine had been produced, it was stored in airtight containers and transported under military escort to the main hospital in the region.

This unit looks at when to use the passive, how to form the passive in different tenses and with prepositions, and the passive with reporting verbs.

Unit contents

1 Avoiding the agent page 083
2 Ordering information page 083
3 The passive in different tenses page 084
4 Passive modal verbs infinitives and gerunds page 085
5 Passive reporting verbs page 086
6 Passives with prepositions page 087

Other units that deal with passives are unit 1 Tense review, and unit 4 Being formal and informal.
### 9.1 Avoiding the agent

The passive is often used when the agent is obvious, general, unimportant, or unknown.

- **70% of the operations were carried out within two days of the patients being admitted to the hospital.**
  (It's obvious that doctors or surgeons would carry out the operations, and hospital staff would admit the patients.)
- **Passports can be renewed online or at a post office.**
  (The agents are 'people' in general.)
- **An opinion poll was conducted in Scotland to find out how much support there currently is for independence.**
  (The agent - a market research company in this case, presumably - is unimportant.)
- **Two students were attacked on their way home from a town centre club.** (The agent is unknown. No one knows who attacked the students.)

The agent is usually obvious, general, unimportant or unknown when processes are being described. It is very common to use the passive in this case, particularly when there are a number of stages to mention.

- **To ensure their freshness, peas are shelled, sorted, washed, and frozen within two hours of being picked.**

(See section 9.6 on page 087 for information on including the agent.)

### 9.2 Ordering information

You can use the passive to put information in the order that best suits the text. You may wish to mention the action, idea, or event itself first, for example, rather than the agent or agents.

- **A potential cure for Alzheimer's has been discovered by scientists working at the Hays Laboratory in Texas.**

In the text below, the writer introduces the President as the main topic in the first sentence, and then uses the passive to keep him as the subject of the next two sentences.

- **At around 4.30 p.m., the President arrived in Lagos. He was shown a new building project before being taken to the restored Museum of Ancient Art. Later he was offered tea at the Mayor's residence on Princes Street.**

Notice what the alternative in the active voice might look like.

- **At around 4.30 p.m., the President arrived in Lagos. His hosts showed him a new building project ... (His hosts is distracting and doesn’t add any important information.)**

**Tip** There are some common intransitive verbs (i.e. verbs without an object) such as arrive, be, come, go, happen, look which do not have a passive form.

### 9.1 test yourself

Rewrite the sentences so that the underlined phrase is the subject. Do not include the agent.

1. A company launched a new device for measuring the purity of water at a conference in Manchester last year.
2. Factories abroad make most of the spare parts for the car.
3. Construction companies build some new urban roads without pavements.
4. Someone stole four laptops from the offices of the research team.
5. People can obtain copies of the company’s annual report from reception.
6. Staff print, pack, and distribute the new brochures to all the retail outlets.

### 9.2 test yourself

Rewrite the sentences so that the underlined phrase is the subject. Include the agent unless it is in brackets.

1. A team of Swiss naturalists identified twelve new species of Peruvian insect last year.
2. Pablo Picasso painted Guernica in 1937 as a direct response to the bombing of the Basque town. (The artist) first exhibited it as part of the Spanish display at the World’s Fair in Paris in 1937.
3. Hi-tech companies have created 10,000 new jobs in the UK electronics industry since 2008.
4. (A construction company) converted the Menier Chocolate Factory into a theatre in 2004. Over the last few years, (its artistic director) has staged a number of award-winning productions there.
The passive in different tenses

9.3 study

The passive voice is formed with be + past participle. Here are examples in all the tenses.

present simple:
• In Sylvia Plath’s poetry, her personal concerns are transformed into something almost mythical.

present continuous:
• A new system of ‘tolerated drug zones’ is currently being established in five inner-city areas.

present perfect:
• New measures to combat the selling of illegal drugs have recently been put in place by the government.

past simple:
• In the investigation, five deaths in custody were linked to a small group of prison officers who all belonged to the same golf club.

past continuous:
• New trade agreements were being drafted right up until the moment that the talks collapsed.

past perfect:
• It took more than a decade after penicillin had been discovered for scientists to find a way of stabilizing and mass-producing it.

will future:
• Nothing will be achieved unless the recommendations of the panel are implemented within the next year.

going to future:
• A massive effort on the part of local councils is going to be required to meet the recycling targets.

future perfect:
• The sponsors are hoping that the construction of the stadium will have been completed by the time inspectors arrive at the beginning of next year.

**Tip** If you decide to re-order information using the passive voice, you will no longer need an object pronoun if the thing that the pronoun represents is now the subject of your sentence.
• Geologists carefully removed the rocks and placed them in sample bags.
  → The rocks were carefully removed and placed them in sample bags.

9.3 test yourself

A Complete the sentences with the correct passive form of the verb in brackets.

1. It is difficult for Barton plc to do any forward planning, because the company ________________________ (restructure) at the moment.
2. A pop festival ________________________ (plan) to raise money for charity when the backers suddenly withdrew their funding.
3. By April next year, the wasteland next to the army base ________________________ (occupy) by protestors for five years.
4. The prisoners ________________________ (release) by the time the negotiators arrived to begin talks.
5. When a commercial sponsor can be found, the project ________________________ (carry out).

B Rewrite the sentences to make the underlined part the subject. Leave out the agents.

1. Guards were transporting the hostages to the airport when they made their escape.
2. Local authorities are going to demolish six of the region’s smaller clinics and replace them with two new hospitals.
3. Medical science characterizes emphysema by enlarged lungs and breathing difficulties.
4. For hundreds of years, people named hurricanes in the West Indies after the particular saint’s day on which the hurricane occurred.
5. Botanists are discovering new species of plants such as the *Berlinia korupensis* every year in Cameroon’s rainforest.
6. Scientists have used ‘atomic time’ since 1972 as the primary reference for all scientific timing.


9.4 Passive modal verbs, infinitives and gerunds

9.4 study

1 Modal verbs

You will find the passive voice with modal verbs (modal verb + be + past participle) useful in ordering information effectively and leaving out unimportant agents. The verbs most frequently used are can and could (expressing possibility), and must and should (expressing obligation).

- Wikipedia can be edited by anyone with access to the internet.
- Exporting to a new market could be described as one of the key challenges facing an expanding business.
- Any incident involving staff trained in first aid must be reported to a senior manager.
- Local radio is a medium that should not be overlooked when planning an advertising campaign.

Past forms are less common.
- Alternative proposals should have been explained in detail before the committee reached its decision.

2 Infinitives with to and gerunds

You can also use infinitives with to and gerunds in the passive. A passive infinitive is formed by verb + to be + past participle.
- Most clients expect to be met at the airport.
- The staff who had hoped to be given a pay rise were offered a bonus scheme instead.

A passive gerund is formed by verb + being + past participle.
- No managing director enjoys being criticized by shareholders.
- Curators at the gallery denied being influenced by negative reviews when they closed the exhibition two weeks early.

9.4 test yourself

A Correct the incorrect sentences. Some sentences are already correct.
1 Health and safety checks must to be carried out by qualified staff.
2 Officials from the trade delegation resented a junior member of staff.
3 None of the files can be accessed without a password.
4 The equipment in a laboratory should not touch until a member of staff is present.
5 Burton argues that a council without a published ‘green agenda’ deserves to be criticized.
6 Early types of rifle could not be fired without significant risk of injury to the soldier.

B Using the passive form of the underlined verb phrases, make the necessary changes to the sentences. Include the agent unless it is in brackets.
1 Local communities can make simple changes to aid biodiversity, according to Shalmi (2012).
2 Most people would prefer (the relevant authorities) to consult them before a flight path is permanently re-routed over the area where they live.
3 Middleton (2011) argues that better quality healthcare could prevent more than 100,000 deaths per year in the UK.
4 Holstein (2009) describes (an official) questioning him for three hours in a threatening manner at Los Angeles International Airport.
5 BAA is piloting a system that will allow (officials) to examine hand luggage more efficiently.
6 If an accident victim is unconscious, (someone) should check his or her breathing regularly.
9.5 Passive reporting verbs

9.5 study

An important way of achieving the impersonal style that academic writing often requires is to use the passive form of a small group of reporting verbs (believe, claim, estimate, expect, feel, know, report, say, think, understand).

• It is estimated that Saudi Arabia holds 18% of the global reserves of oil.

Sentences using this type of structure can start either with it ... (sometimes called an ‘empty’ subject), or with the third person singular or plural (the American President ..., BP ..., experts ..., etc.) The examples below demonstrate the variety of tenses that can be used.

1 It + be + past participle + that ...

• (People believe that =) It is believed that computer science, despite the progress of the last twenty years, is still in its infancy.
• Someone has said that =) It has been said that the prison system does very little to rehabilitate prisoners.
• (People understood that =) It was understood that a new trade treaty between Japan and China would be signed in December last year, but the two negotiating teams could not reach agreement.

2 Third person singular/plural + be + past participle + infinitive with to...

• (People think that Alex Rodriguez earns =) Alex Rodriguez, the American baseball player, is thought to earn $7.5 million a year.
• (They had expected that the Prime Minister would stop over =) The Prime Minister had been expected to stop over in Berlin on his way to the Moscow summit, but his schedule was changed at the last moment.

In the following example, a continuous infinitive with to is used because the action (children working) is taking place at the time of writing.

• (People know that children are working =) Children are known to be working in the silk-weaving industry of Kanchipuram in India.

In the example below, a past infinitive with to is used because the action (buying a controlling share) has happened already, if the reports are true.

• (Someone reports that Banco Do Brasil has bought =) Banco Do Brasil is reported to have bought a controlling share of the Florida-based Eurobank.

You can achieve an effect similar to that of the passive by the structure have + something + past participle. It is used to say that we have arranged or are planning to arrange a professional service or professional help.

• We’re having our new factory designed by a team of award-winning architects.
• We had all our staff trained in presentation skills.

9.5 test yourself

Rewrite the sentences, starting with the word(s) in brackets. Do not include the agent.

1 Officials have estimated that the cost of repairing the fire damage to the port will be £60m. (It ...) 2 There are reports that oil companies are exploring parts of Antarctica. (Oil companies ...) 3 Most people believe that Athens in Ancient Greece is the site of the first democracy. (Athens ...) 4 People think that Juan Olmo, who died in 2009, was Europe’s most skilful brain surgeon. (Juan Olmo ...) 5 A journalist claimed that the drug had been tested on soldiers without their knowledge. (It ...) 6 Commentators say that passengers on the new jet experience a slight feeling of weightlessness. (Passengers ...)
9.6 Passives with prepositions

9.6 study

1. By

By introduces agents in passive sentences.

- *Liverpool FC was bought by American billionaire John Henry.*
- *(in a seminar)* Was The Golden Bowl written by William Faulkner or Henry James?

\[\text{tIP}\] Sometimes, if the order of the information is not important (see section 9.2 on page 083), and the description of the agent is long, it may be appropriate to use the passive voice. This way your reader doesn’t have to read a lot of detail before getting to the action or event that is being described.

- *The bridge was designed by a small group of highly-experienced engineers from a company in Glasgow.*

You can use *by* with a non-human agent.

- *Mudslides may be caused by heavy rainfall.*
- *Rare languages are sometimes preserved by recordings.* (by = by means of)

2. Other prepositions

There is a group of verbs + prepositions that are more commonly used in the passive than the active voice in academic English. These include associated with, attributed to, based on, classified as, composed of, confined to, diagnosed as/with, entitled to, and located at/in/on.

- *Apple’s success has largely been attributed to the creative energy of its late CEO, Steve Jobs.*
- *From its discovery in 1930 until 2006, Pluto was classified as a planet.*
- *Clearsight plc’s marketing drive was initially confined to domestic sales.*
- *All workers in the UK are entitled to the minimum wage.*

\[\text{tIP}\] Diagnosed as is normally followed by an adjective or by *having + the name of a disease; diagnosed with* is normally followed simply by the name of the disease.

- *Two of the children in the group were diagnosed as dyslexic/as having dyslexia/with dyslexia.*

9.6 test yourself

Complete each sentence with a preposition.

1. The Little Neath River Cave is located _______ South Wales.
2. The risks of contamination can be reduced _______ temperature control.
3. Healthier diets in pregnant women are associated _______ reduced risks of birth defects.
4. Defendants in some trials have to be separated _______ glass shields from the court.
5. Before being formally diagnosed _______ diabetic, a person may have suffered from the disease for a number of years.
6. The spread of some diseases can be controlled _______ vaccination.
7. Two of the films that won awards at the Cannes Film Festival were based _______ true stories.
8. The United Arab Emirates is composed _______ seven sheikdoms.
Challenge yourself

A Complete the text about whaling with the correct passive form of the verb in brackets.

For centuries, or even millennia, whales \(1\) (hunt) offshore from small boats such as canoes and kayaks. From the mid-nineteenth century, with the development of the Industrial Revolution, this fairly limited activity \(2\) (join) by pelagic, that is, deep sea, whaling, culminating in modern factory ships. In the 1960s, £20 million \(3\) (generate) annually by the global whaling industry. In spite of the worldwide ban on commercial whaling that \(4\) (impose) in 1986, it is worth noting that small-scale shore-based hunting of cetaceans continues in several countries from the Arctic to Polynesia. It \(5\) (justify) on the grounds of continuing a long cultural tradition, and usually the meat and other products \(6\) (consume) within the same community.

B Complete the text about a form of mental illness, using the phrases in the box and a form of be. Two of the phrases are not needed.

Patients who \(1\) (associate) with bipolar often face a frustrating search for suitable treatment. Serious side effects \(2\) (be) some of the most frequently prescribed medications, and this leads some patients to discontinue the drugs. In trying to take control of their lives, they may \(3\) (become) non-compliant, especially by doctors without specialist training. Patients \(4\) (entitle) a free consultation with a psychiatrist, but often this entails a long wait, during which the condition can worsen. In the worst cases, the person may need \(5\) an in-patient facility, and perhaps even \(6\) a secure ward in a psychiatric hospital. These psychiatric hospitals tend \(7\) some distance from the patient’s home, increasing the sense of isolation and betrayal.
C In the text about a public health pioneer, match the beginning of each sentence with the correct ending.

1. The observation that infections were being transmitted between patients
   a. could be dramatically reduced by the use of hand disinfection.

2. The physician who first deduced the link
   b. were turned down by many publishers.

3. He is now known to be
   c. were offended at the implication that they were unclean.

4. Dr. Semmelweis was working in the obstetric clinic at Vienna General Hospital,
   d. was shunned by his colleagues and his findings were ignored.

5. He discovered that the number of cases of this so-called childbed fever
   e. was committed to an asylum for the mentally ill, where he died two weeks later.

6. The scientific papers that he wrote about this
   f. were rejected by his medical peers.

7. His ideas
   g. were offended at the implication that they were unclean.

8. Some doctors
   h. by the doctor who was treating them was a radical one for the mid-nineteenth century.

9. Still only in his 40s, Semmelweis experienced a mental breakdown, and
   i. one of the most visionary scientists of his age.

10. Later, when Louis Pasteur explained his germ theory, Semmelweis
    j. where many women died of infection within days of giving birth.

D Correct the mistakes in the underlined verb forms in the text about dementia.

Some verb forms are correct.

According to recent reports, the threat posed by dementia was growing as societies age. To start with, dementia can be defined as a decline in mental functioning over time, beyond what might be expected from the natural effects of aging. A recent survey that is being conducted by the Dementia Alliance revealed that the costs to health services are increased twice as fast as inflation, and within twenty years are expecting to outrun the amounts spent on cancer treatment.

As with other cognitive disorders, higher or more complex mental functions had been affected before the simpler ones. If, unusually, the illness strikes a patient under 65, it is termed ‘early onset dementia’. Another minority of patients have what is known as ‘mixed dementia’.

AWL GLOSSARY

transmit: to pass something from one person to another

deduce: to form an opinion about something based on the information or evidence that is available

mental: connected with the state of health of the mind or with the treatment of illnesses of the mind

theory: a formal set of ideas that is intended to explain why something happens or exists

dramatically: in a sudden, very great, and often surprising way

publisher: a person or company that prepares and prints books, magazines, newspapers, or electronic products and makes them available to the public

pose: to create a threat, problem, etc. that has to be dealt with

function: to work in the correct way

survey: an investigation of the opinions, behaviour, etc. of a particular group of people, which is usually done by asking them questions

minority: the smaller part of a group; less than half of the people or things in a large group
E Put the words in the correct order to complete the text about environmental laws.

1. been environmental has legislation passed
2. as being environmental imposed legislation on them
3. expected is know of them what
4. are member obliged pursue states this to
5. business factory having insulated its

_________________ in Brussels and Strasbourg on such diverse matters as climate change, air quality, waste, agriculture, chemicals, and building. 2009 saw the implementation of the EU Directive on Energy Performance of Buildings, which requires member states to apply minimum requirements to the energy performance of new and existing buildings. Some businesses may see ____________, but others see it as an opportunity. Once industry leaders ____________, they can adapt their businesses accordingly. For example, the EU Climate and Energy objectives are a reduction of 20% of carbon by 2020 and a 20% energy savings by 2020 (known as 20:20:20). ____________ as a policy, and governments need business on their side. A micro example of this would be a small ____________.

F Complete the text about protests against 'big business' with the correct passive form of the verb in brackets. Add the three agents in the box in the correct places.

by mining by the state by the poor

Protests against 'big business' tend to focus on companies which cause environmental problems or which operate in the area of financial services. For example, a lot of environmental degradation ____________ (cause). When the desired commodity ____________ (extract), and it is no longer economically feasible to continue, the mine ____________ (abandon), leaving, in the worst case scenario, a ruined landscape behind, suitable for nothing.

There are also protests against companies, especially banks, which ____________ (perceive, avoid, pay) their share of taxes. Some of these ____________ (bail out) when they were in trouble as a result of the banking crisis, and yet their senior managers managed to escape public responsibility. The ramifications of their poor economic decisions ____________ (continue, feel), and paradoxically, the main burden ____________ (bear). Until multinational companies become more aware of their impact on society, they ____________ (target) by anti-capitalist and environmental protestors.
A form of the verb be (e.g. been, was) has been omitted from seven of the nine sentences in the text about the material graphene. Complete the text with the missing words.

1. Graphene has called the latest miracle material. It is said to be the thinnest material in the world, and possibly the hardest and the strongest as well.

2. Graphene is a form of carbon in which the atoms packed into a lattice structure which is so flat that it can be considered two-dimensional. It described in the 1980s, but it took until 2004 before it was isolated and manipulated. The physicists whose experiments led to this increased understanding, Konstantin Novoselov and Andre Geim, awarded the Nobel Prize in 2010.

3. They have been cautious in their claims for the practical implications of their discoveries, but other commentators, particularly media popularizers, have made grand claims about graphene.

4. It has already made into a touchscreen, and the possibilities are enormous if the material can, as its supporters suggest, replace silicon.

5. A great deal of industrial money and research time are currently invested in its future.

6. Within a decade, either the promise of graphene will have fulfilled, or investors and scientists will have walked away.

H Write 100–200 words about a set of safety procedures, for example, what to do in case of fire at work or school. Use as many passive structures as possible.
There are a number of different ways of setting out an argument in academic English, but at some point you are likely to have to describe the following.

1 The scope of your case (the elements you think it appropriate to include).

2 Your thesis statement (your central point of view or main claim).

3 A series of points that support your claim.

4 A number of counter-arguments (significant views that are different from yours, on which you need to comment).

5 The conclusions you have reached (and perhaps some recommendations arising from your conclusions).

This unit presents a range of words, phrases and structures to help you with these stages, and also looks at the ways of expressing advantages and disadvantages that you might need in a more discussion-based text.
10.1 Scope

10.1 study

Stating the scope of an essay may involve analysis verbs, and sequencing and focusing language.

1 Analysis verbs

Verbs such as analyse, consider, describe, define, examine, explain, evaluate, and introduce can be used in the future tense with will or in the present simple to describe the purpose of the whole or parts of your essay.

- This essay will examine/examines to what extent full political participation is realized in three mature democracies.
- In the third part of the essay, I will consider how the National Health Service could change over the next ten years.

**Tip** For extra impact, we can use a continuous tense with verbs such as suggest, argue, and discuss.

- In the final part of this report, I will be arguing that new legislation is required to control copyright abuse.

2 Sequencing language

You can use the following verbs, words and phrases to describe the sequence of your essay.

a Verbs such as start, begin, move on to, follow, finish, and conclude.

b Words and phrases such as firstly, first of all, in the second part, next, then, finally, lastly, and in conclusion.

- Our team was asked to recommend the next step for JavaBrew, a successful start-up. This report will start by giving some background on the company. It will then move on to the factors we took into consideration, namely PEST and SWOT analyses, a survey of competitors, and the needs of the owner-founders. We will follow this with an examination of possible alternative business models, and explain why some of them are not good fits for JavaBrew. Finally, we will make one concrete recommendation.

Note above how, after these verbs (apart from move on to), you can use by + -ing form to add another verb (start by giving) and with to add a noun (follow this with an examination).

**Tip** The sequencing language described above is also useful for presentations, where it is normal to begin with a description of the main parts of your talk.

- I will start my presentation by defining the term globalization. Then I will examine two companies that seem to exemplify the concept...

3 Focusing language

You may sometimes need to limit the scope of your work and explain what it does and doesn’t cover. Verbs and phrases that describe the focus of your essay include focus on and refer to (sometimes with the adverbs only and exclusively), for the purposes of, beyond/outside the scope of, and with reference to.

- For the purposes of this essay, I will take the example of the Hundertwasser Apartments in Vienna, and, with reference to the arguments that were put forward against the initial plans, comment on the reviews published shortly after completion. Issues concerning the pricing of the apartments are beyond the scope of this essay, which will focus exclusively on the technology and design.

Note that you could rewrite the last sentence using a negative form of one of the verbs cover, deal with, or touch on: This essay will not cover the pricing of apartments, but will focus exclusively on the technology and design.

10.1 test yourself

Complete the paragraph, using one or two of the words in the box in each space.

Evelyn Bestmeier argues that businesses have three competing strategies for expansion beyond their country of origin: globalization, internationalization, and what he calls ‘worldification’. First _______________, this essay _______________ define these models. Then it will _______________ examples of each of these in the strategies of well-known companies. _______________, it will move _______________ an evaluation of the value added by each model. _______________, the essay will _______________ an account of how a fictional company might go about choosing one of these three, and the likely consequences of this choice. Although these strategies can be employed by companies originating in any country, _______________ purposes of this essay I will _______________ only to British and American-based businesses.
10.2 Thesis statement

10.2 study

A thesis statement, normally found near the beginning of an essay, summarizes the position you will take in an argumentative essay. Generally speaking, such statements are optional, but you may wish to consult your department for advice.

If you do include a thesis statement, you need to make your opinion clear, though you can vary the strength from tentative to emphatic.

• My contention is that our current prison system tends to render reoffending more rather than less likely.
• I will argue that it is vital for governments to introduce measures that will actively discourage the use of private cars in city centres.

The modal verbs can, should, will, and must are all used in thesis statements, sometimes with connectors expressing cause and effect or results.

• If they are cultivated in a properly regulated way, genetically modified crops can, in my view, offer powerful assistance in the fight against hunger and malnutrition.
• Supermarkets should be encouraged to support the fair trade movement because, as this essay will suggest, it has already proved its worth in terms of grass roots economic progress in developing countries.
• The promotion of national security must not, in other words, become an excuse for the erosion of civil liberties.

To show that you are aware of a main counter-argument, you may wish to include a subordinate clause within the statement, introduced by a connector expressing contrast such as however, although, or despite.

• I will demonstrate that the presence of oil, despite holding out the hope of wealth for one of the world’s poorest countries, is likely to foster security difficulties, as new militia groups emerge.

10.2 test yourself

Complete the sentences, using one of the words in the box in each space. One word is not needed.

despite although if because however can must defend argue

1. Stem cell research __________ be allowed to continue __________ of the medical benefits it will bring.
2. __________ degrading some song lyrics seem to be, this essay will argue that censorship is not the way forward.
3. __________ a law can be appropriately framed, assisted suicide should be permitted.
4. Homeschooling __________ benefit some families, as I will __________ in this essay.
5. This essay will __________ the ‘first past the post’ electoral system in the UK as being the fairest option.
6. __________ manned space exploration is no longer necessary from a purely scientific point of view, I will suggest that it is still a valuable component of national space programmes.

10.3 Presenting and supporting your arguments

10.3 study

You can begin your arguments with simple factual statements.

• There are several clear differences between the financial crash of 2008 and that of 1929.

Quite often, however, you will want to signpost your arguments with an introductory phrase, based around the words argument and point, or by using impersonal structures beginning with there or it.

The main/principal argument for/against ... is (that) ...
One of the main/principal arguments for/against ... is (that) ...
The first point to be considered/made is (that) ...
There is no doubt that ...
It seems clear that ...
It is obvious that ...

• One of the main arguments against car ownership is the sheer cost of purchasing, insuring, and maintaining a vehicle.
• It is obvious that even if we improve methods of conserving energy, our overall energy costs will rise.
You can introduce further arguments with expressions such as secondly, thirdly and finally, and connecting words that express additional information such as furthermore, ... and as well as ...

To support your points, you can use:

1 verbs such as show, demonstrate, exemplify, argue, and maintain
   This is shown/exemplified by/in ...
   As Thompson has argued/maintained ...

2 the nouns example and case
   An example of this is ...
   For example, ...
   A case in point is ...

3 the nouns statistics, research, and studies.
   Statistics indicate that ...
   Research demonstrates that ...
   Studies have shown that ...

- The process of internationalization does not guarantee a uniform service. A case in point is/An example of this is Google, where governments have been able to reach individual agreements with the company.
- In addition, it is clear that the level of the problem is frequently underestimated. Statistics indicate/Research demonstrates, for example, that one in five Americans experience a period of depression in any given year (Stevens, 2007).

You may find it useful in your conclusion to support your arguments with conditional sentences that describe positive or negative results.
- The UK could gain an important competitive edge in manufacturing if the government and business leaders were to work together to bring new life to apprenticeship schemes.

10.3 test yourself

Correct each sentence by adding is.

1 Not all products should be advertised; a case in point is tobacco, where discouraging young people from smoking should have priority over free market principles.
2 Legislation can become more complex than it needs to be; this exemplified in planning law.
3 There no doubt that, unless supply systems are improved, a crisis point is imminent.
4 The main argument for prison its deterrent effect on criminal activity.
5 The first point to be considered that the shortage of water in this region is severe.

10.4 Presenting counter-arguments

10.4 study

In making your case, you will need to introduce, comment on, and evaluate counter-arguments.

1 Introducing counter-arguments

To bring in the views of others you can use:

a verbs such as argue, claim, point out, and state (normally in the present perfect or present simple tense) or believe, maintain, and contend (normally in the present simple)
   Clarkson argues/has argued that ...
   Clarkson believes/maintains/contends that ...

b phrases that may include view or opinion.
   In the view/opinion of Clarkson, ...
   In Clarkson's view/opinion, ...
   According to Clarkson, ...
   Some people believe/think that ...

(See page 58 of unit 6 Stating facts and opinions for introducing quotes, and unit 16 Paraphrasing for ways of restating others' views.)

2 Commenting on counter-arguments

To comment on counter-arguments you can use connectors that express contrast such as although, but, despite, however, and while, and the kind of tentative or emphatic language that is appropriate to your meaning.
- Jefferson maintains that significant scientific breakthroughs can only occur within a context of the regular use of animals in laboratories. While it may be difficult to disagree that animal-based experiments have advanced our understanding of medicine, it is also quite clear that a culture has developed where alternative methods of research have not been fully explored.
- It might be said that in the pressured environment of decision-making there is little time to evaluate fully the ethics of certain courses of action. Recent events, however, have proved that without a proper ethical framework, financial risk-taking can result in behaviour that citizens outside the world of commercial banking might describe as somewhat disturbing.
3 Evaluating counter-arguments

To evaluate counter-arguments it is often useful:

a to explore their effects, using nouns such as result, effect, consequence, and verbs such as cause, lead to.
- One consequence of following Pearson’s arguments for the control of immigration would be a costly and complex nationwide system of ID cards.
- The programme of public education suggested by the report on attitudes to global warming will lead to a level of expenditure that governments are unlikely to be able to afford.

b to make comparisons.
- Rogers advocates a system of proportional representation which would give parties, rather than the voters, much more power to control the final composition of the House of Commons.
- Foster’s arguments are similar to those put forward by Mitchell in that they may underestimate the growing need for low-cost rental accommodation.

(See unit 2 Comparing and contrasting for more information on making comparisons.)

10.4 test yourself

Complete each sentence with one word.

1 Dobie and Klein have __________ out that the ownership of a car is an important aspect of personal autonomy.

2 __________ to EMI, online copyright infringements will only be taken more seriously if there are a series of high-profile prosecutions.

3 Barrett argues that the study of a writer’s life does not contribute in any significant way to the appreciation of their work. I would argue, __________, that biographical information has offered major insights into a number of 19th- and 20th-century novels.

4 Nuclear power is sometimes described as a clean form of energy. __________ it does not pollute in the same constant manner as, for example, the burning of coal, there are major concerns over the potential for radiation leaks.

5 Curfews imposed during riots may actually __________ a counter-productive level of resentment.

6 Abolishing the minimum wage would make economic recovery __________ likely by reducing the spending power of the lowest paid workers.

10.5 Expressing advantages and disadvantages

10.5 study

In some seminar discussions, or in essays where you are invited to discuss a topic, you may need to consider the advantages and disadvantages of a concept.

1 Sentence patterns

Two sentence patterns that you will find useful are:

- an advantage of/a disadvantage of + noun/-ing form + is (that) ...
- an advantage of/a disadvantage of + noun/-ing form + is + noun phrase
  - An advantage of cycling is that you can keep fit as well as completing a necessary journey.
  - A disadvantage of toll systems on roads is the high cost of administration.

2 Advantage/disadvantage synonyms

Useful synonyms include:

- advantage of: benefit of, positive aspect of, point in favour of
- disadvantage of: negative feature of, drawback to/of, objection to

3 Collocations

Useful collocations include:

- for advantage and benefit: obvious, significant, major, minor
- for disadvantage, drawback, and objection: serious, minor

Note that instead of an advantage, a disadvantage, etc. you can say one/a further/another/a second, etc. advantage/disadvantage.
10.5 test yourself
Complete the sentences, using one of the words in the box in each space.

of to advantage drawback serious second favour

1 One further _____ to the creation of virtual galleries is that they cannot convey the physical properties of works of art.
2 A point in _____ of 'green chemistry' is that it encourages manufacturers to seek innovative ways of producing goods.
3 Another _____ objection ______ genetic testing is the impact it is likely to have on the cost of life insurance policies.
4 A_____ significant benefit ______ consulting a focus group is that it may produce ideas that advertisers will not have considered.
5 A major _____ of regular staff meetings is the sense of cohesion that they can produce.

10.6 Conclusions and recommendations

10.6 study

1 Introducing conclusions
Useful ways include using a fixed expression or a phrase ending in that... followed by your concluding remarks.

a Fixed expressions

To conclude,... To summarize,...
In conclusion,... In summary,...
To sum up,... As we have seen,...

b Phrases ending in that...

To conclude etc., we can/may say that...
To conclude etc., it can/may be said that...
Thus,/On the basis of these arguments, we can/may conclude that...
Thus,/On the basis of these arguments, it can/may be concluded that...

• On the basis of these arguments, it can be concluded that if aid projects are constructed in such a way that their sustainability lies in the hands of the local population, a dependency culture such as Norman and Martinsen describe need not follow. As we have seen, this will depend on three key factors: firstly, ..., etc.

2 Making recommendations

You can use introductory phrases before your recommendation(s), or passive forms after them.

a Introductory phrases

It is therefore recommended that...
On the basis of this discussion, it would be advisable (for someone/something) to + verb...
On the basis of this discussion, it would be advisable for + noun...
It follows that there is a need (for someone/something) to + verb...
It follows that there is a need for + noun...

• It follows that there is an urgent need for states to reconsider the way in which they model the various scenarios that may follow any act of humanitarian intervention.

Adjectives that collocate with need include continuing, growing, immediate, pressing, urgent.

b Endings using the passive form

... should/must be done/carry out/put in place.
... is (therefore) recommended/needed.
... could/should be considered.

• It is clear from these arguments that measures against cyber-bullying, agreed by the providers of social network sites, should be put in place.

10.6 test yourself
Correct each sentence by amending or replacing one word only.

1 There follows that there is an urgent need to find strategies for preventing iron deficiency anaemia in infants.
2 Thus, it can be conclude that emotional intelligence is an important factor in the success of teamwork.
3 On conclusion, it is clear that many of the pollution problems have been resolved.
4 An approach that prioritizes community needs is therefore recommend.
5 On the basis of this evidence, it would be advised to ensure that electroconvulsive therapy is only used for the short-term treatment of patients with severe symptoms.
6 To conclude, we may be said that the bail-out package offered to Portugal holds out a reasonable prospect of recovery.
Challenge yourself

A Complete the paragraph from a text about organizational models, using the words in the box.

Handy 1______his theory of organizational models in *The Gods of Management* (1978). He 2______the university an exemplar of the Dionysian model, and this essay will 3______to what extent that analysis is accurate. Certainly, one phrase used to 4______managing academics is ‘like herding cats’, as, typically, each academic attempts to pursue his or her own agenda. However, it can be 5______that universities demonstrate elements of each of the other models as well. 6______we will consider the club culture of Zeus, which can be seen in some academic departments, if they happen to have a strong chair who prefers to operate in that way. 7______, we will show how the task-driven ethos of Athena comes to the fore in the setting up of working groups or projects. 8______and most importantly, we will evaluate the under-appreciated influence of the role culture of Apollo.

B First match the beginning of each sentence with the correct ending. Then put the sentences in the correct order to make a single paragraph about the banking crisis.

1. The second difference is ...
2. At the same time, ...
3. The most obvious of these is size: ...
4. This is demonstrated by ...
5. The most conspicuous example of this was ...
6. It seems clear ...

a. the high proportion of GDP which relied on financial services at the beginning of the 21st century.
b. that the under-regulated financial sector was engaging in very poor practices.
c. that there are several differences between the 2008 banking crash and the one of 1929.
d. that many millions of people had been persuaded to purchase houses for the first time, when their financial position made this an unwise decision.
e. the financial industry had grown exponentially through the developed world, and especially in the UK and the US.
f. other sectors such as agriculture and manufacturing had declined.

C Put the words in the correct order to complete the introduction to an essay about car ownership.

1. a although are benefits car many owning to there
2. both evaluate I of these will
3. are beyond essay of the this scope
4. consequences environmental focus instead, it on the will
5. argue for I is it that vital will

In many countries, owning a car is a necessity for each household and sometimes for each adult. 1________________, there are also disbenefits, on the one hand for the individual, and on the other hand for society. 2________________. The geo-political ramifications of the world’s dependence on oil 3________________, understood in the widest sense, at the city or regional level. 4________________ legislators to take account of the negative effects of cities designed around the private motor vehicle.
Hyperson (2011) asserts that Google internationalization. Is this accurate? 1__________ that such an analysis represents an unhelpful oversimplification. Of course, it is true that Google is available in almost all countries. 3__________ not all of the services remain the same to users around the world.

My 4__________ is that there is no substitute for a thorough grasp of more than one language. 5__________ that children who grow up multilingual exhibit a higher level of mental flexibility. 6__________ that there is an immediate need for better education on the subject.

7__________, we have looked at the causes of spiraling personal debt, the role of companies offering short-term loans, and what the government is doing about the situation. 8__________, new legislation is urgently needed.

In this essay 9__________ some of the world’s most overlooked countries, the so-called micronations. 10__________ the term refers to groups of people claiming territorial sovereignty, but whose claims are not recognized by any major international organization. Examples include Sealand and Seborga. (Micronations are to be distinguished from microstates such as Singapore and Vatican City.) 11__________ by looking at the impact of their formation on a macro level, and 12__________ to examine their impact on the lives of individuals.

Write the introductory paragraph (150–250 words) to an essay on one of the following subjects. Make sure you state clearly what you intend to argue in the essay, and how you intend to prove your case.

1. The (banking, newspaper, higher education, food, etc.) industry has proved that it cannot govern itself, and so needs tighter regulation.
2. Healthcare should be provided by the state.
Modal verbs

Introduction

City authorities should consider the advantages to be gained from creating cycle-friendly road systems. As the proportion of cyclists to motorists increases, the level of pollution will fall, for example, and traffic will flow more quickly during the rush hours. But, apart from the benefits that an increased level of cycling can bring to the city as a whole, we must also think of the gains to the health of its citizens; a daily cycle to and from work can easily satisfy a person's weekly requirement for exercise.

Of the four different modal verbs you have underlined (two of the six are repeated), which one means:

1. it's necessary? __________
2. it's possible? __________
3. it's a good idea? __________
4. it's likely to? __________

Suggested answers: see page 202

There are nine modal verbs: can, could, may, might, must, shall, should, will, and would. Although different in meaning, they all share the following grammatical features.

1. Their form doesn't change.
2. They are all followed by the infinitive without to.
3. They all come before not in negatives, and before the subject in yes/no questions.

- First of all, I will discuss the effects of overfishing in the waters around the UK.
- Plans to separate retail banking from more speculative types of investment may not succeed.
- (in a seminar) Could you please explain exactly how you define 'congestion'?

In addition there is a small group of 'semi-modal' verbs, which have a similar function to modal verbs: ought to, need, have to, have got to, had better, and be supposed to (all covered in this unit); and be going to and used to (covered in unit 1 Tense review). Occasionally, modal and semi-modal verbs are used together.

- If Plan A for the economy failed, the government might need to have a Plan B.

Modal verbs are a key tool for expressing a writer's attitude or point of view in academic English. In this unit, they are divided into groups that express similar types of meaning, finishing with a section on the use of modals in spoken academic situations such as meetings with tutors, seminars, and presentations.

Other units that deal with modal verbs are unit 1 Tense review, unit 8 Being emphatic, unit 14 Hedging, and unit 17 Conditionals.
11.1 Ability (can, could, be able to)

11.1 study

1 Can

Can expresses present ability (often very similar in meaning to possibility).
- Scientists can observe images of atoms by using an instrument known as an electron microscope.
- It is both a strength and weakness of Wikipedia that anyone can update its pages.

Note that be able to has the same meaning: Scientists are able to observe...

Sometimes, because of the way you want to start a sentence, you will need to use a passive form of can (can + be + past participle).
- A parallel can be drawn between a country’s reaction to a natural disaster and a company’s response to recession. (instead of We can draw a parallel ...)

2 Could

Could expresses general ability in the past.
- When mass share ownership was at its height, small investors believed they could ‘play’ the stock market alongside corporate stockbrokers.

But remember that for specific actions (often achievements), you can’t normally use could. Instead of could you can use was/were able to. You can also use succeeded in + -ing form of verb or managed + infinitive with to.
- After lengthy talks, the British and Irish governments could were able to sign the Good Friday Agreement on 11 April 1998.
- African-American athlete Jesse Owens could win succeeded in winning/managed to win four gold medals at the Berlin Olympics of 1936.

Note that this rule does not apply to could not, or to could only, could hardly, and could before the verbs see, hear, taste, and smell, which can all be used for general or specific ability in the past.
- The team could not find a way of isolating the chemical they wanted to work with.
- The two climbers could only get to the summit with computer-based logistical support.
- When she woke the next morning, naturalist Jo Bailey could hear a group of gorillas close to her tent.

Could have + past participle can be used for things that people or organizations had the ability to do, but didn’t actually do.
- Wentworth Holdings plc could have offered its customers refunds as a goodwill gesture, but declined to do so.

3 Be able to

To write about ability in the future, or describe a situation where a present perfect or infinitive form of a verb would be appropriate, you need to use a form of be able to.
- If the building contractors start work on the refurbishment of the theatre in May, the owners will be able to reopen it for performances in October.
- Researchers have not yet been able to formulate a model of the human brain that everyone can agree with.
- The NHS hopes to be able to open six new cancer clinics in the next five years.

11.1 test yourself

Correct the verb forms. Sometimes more than one answer is possible. Some sentences are already correct.

1 Fortunately, rescue ships could remove the crew safely from the sinking tanker.
2 The government may have bailed out the failing steelworks, but decided not to take this course of action.
3 The company claims to be able to produce an effective recyclable plastic bag.
4 Investigators could immediately see what had caused the accident.
5 No one can ever be able to prove so far that Goldman’s Conjecture works for every even number.
6 In May 2011 scientists from IBM Zurich could produce images of electrons using a scanning microscope.
7 The duties of an absent member of staff can sometimes be shared among colleagues.
8 According to scientists at the University of Geneva, we will soon be able to produce short bursts of rainfall safely through the use of lasers.
**11.2 Possibility [**may**, could, might]**

**11.2 study**

1. *May*, *might* (not), and *could* (but not *could not*) are used to say that something is possible (or not possible) in the present or future.

   - *In any situation where redundancies are planned, there may/could/might be tension between those who are staying, and those who are losing their jobs.*
   - *Indeed, the government may not/might not/could not find a solution to the housing problem in the foreseeable future.*

   The meaning of the three verbs is similar in the first example above, although *could* is slightly weaker than *may*, and *might* is sometimes considered to be the weakest.

2. *May/might/could* + *have* + past participle is used to talk about possibility in the past.

   - *The demonstrators may/might/could have weakened their case by allowing some of their supporters to cause criminal damage.*

   But note that *could not have* has a different meaning from *may/might not have*.

   - *The climbing team may/might not have reached the summit without helicopter assistance.* (= they possibly would not have reached the summit...)
   - *The climbing team could not have reached the summit without helicopter assistance.* (= they definitely would not have reached the summit...)

3. You will find *might/could* (sometimes in passive form) useful in discussion-based writing. Starting a sentence with *It might/could be argued that* ... is a way of being cautious, for example (see page 128 in unit 14 Hedging for more information), and *could* is also useful for discussing what it is and isn’t possible to achieve.

   - *It would be a mistake to think that the model of British supermarkets, which is so successful in their home market, could be rolled out across the world.*

**11.2 test yourself**

Complete each sentence with one of the phrases in the box. One phrase is not needed.

**might have** may not could not
may focus could soon may explain
might be

1. It _________ suggested that the team’s research methods were less than perfect.
2. In anti-capitalist demonstrations, protestors _________ on specific companies.
3. A personal computer device _________ be developed with the sole purpose of detecting medical conditions.
4. Poll argues that the geological team _________ overlooked some of the evidence at the site of the volcano.
5. Genetic research at the Harvard Medical School _________ why women suffer more from migraines than men.
6. Proponents of ‘intelligent design’ assert that evolution _________ possibly have produced certain biological structures.

**11.3 Obligation and necessity [**must**, should, ought to, have to]**

**11.3 study**

1. Obligation

   *Must*, *should*, *ought to*, and *have to* are all used to express obligation (things that people or organizations have a responsibility to do). *Must* and *have to* both express strong obligation, but *have to* is more common in conversation than in academic English. *Should* and *ought to* are not as strong, and *ought to* is less common in all forms of English.

   - *We must begin by looking at the effects on the country of colonial rule.*
   - *Judges should not assume that juries will understand the reasons for giving shorter prison sentences.*

   The negative form of *ought to* is normally *oughtn’t* to in spoken English and *ought not* to in written English.

   - *Law firms ought not to encourage the notion that whenever a member of the public suffers an accident, he or she should seek personal injury compensation.*
Must not means ‘it is not permitted’ (You must not arrive late for an exam), whereas do not have to means ‘you are not obliged to’ (You do not have to stay for the last half hour of the exam if you have finished).

The past form of both must and have to is had to.
(For the meaning of must have + past participle, see 2 below.) The past forms of should and ought to are should have + past participle and ought to have + past participle.

• In a speech in 2007, President Bush controversially seemed to suggest that Americans troops should have stayed longer in Vietnam.

2 Logical necessity

Must, should, ought to, and occasionally have to, are also used to express logical necessity (often referred to as ‘deduction’) either in the present or past. Again, the meaning of should/ought to is weaker.

• The results should be reliable, given that the drug was extensively tested over a period of five years.

• If he reached the summit, Mallory’s final ascent without modern equipment must have been very difficult.

Note that in this meaning we do not use must or must have + past participle in the negative. We use a form of can instead.

• Gilway argues that the government’s calculation of expenditure cannot must not be right in this instance.

• When the law was passed, the government could not/cannot have known how quickly the business power of the internet would increase.

3 Passive forms

Passive forms of these verbs are useful when the agent (person or organization doing the action) is unknown, unimportant, or difficult to specify.

a Obligation

• Measures to counter global warming must be put in place over the next ten years. (= put in place by governments, international agencies, multinational corporations, etc.)

b Logical necessity

• Records must have been destroyed before the police arrived. (= agent unknown)

11.4 Forms of need

11.4 study

There are several ways of using need. It can be used as an ordinary verb or as a semi-modal verb. These are the main structures with need that we use in academic English.

1 Need + noun phrase (ordinary verb)

• Some of California’s cities already need much more water than their local supplies can provide.

2 Need + infinitive with to (ordinary verb, similar meaning to must/have to for obligation)

• Tony Blair realized that the Labour Party needed to (= had to) appeal to the voters of ‘middle England’ if it were to be elected to government.

3 Needn’t/Need not + infinitive without to (semi-modal verb)

This semi-modal form is normally used in spoken academic English, but in writing, we tend to use the negative form of the ordinary verb instead.

• We needn’t examine every single study to realize that there is a link between the presence of the virus in the cells, and the onset of the disease.

• We needn’t examine We do not need to examine every ...
4 Need not/Needn't + have + past participle

This semi-modal form, used in writing (as need not rather than needn't) and speech, describes unnecessary actions that people/organizations have taken.

- Frank Whittle, inventor of the jet engine, argued that Britain need not have fought the Battle of Britain at all if the government had funded his research at an earlier stage.

This semi-modal form cannot be replaced by did not need to, because the past negative form of the ordinary verb means something different – actions that people didn’t take because they were unnecessary.

- In the end, the USA did not need to look further than its own backyard for the new source of energy called ‘shale gas’.

11.4 test yourself

Circle the correct or more appropriate option. If both are correct, circle both.

1 The experiment needed/had to be repeated after faults were discovered in the procedure.
2 This report does not need to/needn’t address the situation in Nigeria because it has already been resolved.
3 Victor plc did not need to go/need not have gone bankrupt if it had limited its business to the UK.
4 If local farms are to survive, water resources must/need to be better protected.
5 We needn’t/don’t need to spend too much time in this talk on the work of Everson because it has largely been discredited.
6 Money was saved because the company need not have built/did not need to build an extension to the dam.

11.5 Will, would, shall

11.5 study

1 Will

Will is used for:

a describing the future (The Prime Minister will spend two days in Moscow.)

b first conditional sentences (If temperatures rise, forest fires will break out again.)

c describing the scope of an essay (This essay will consider three types of bacteria.)

2 Would

Would is used:

a as the past tense of will in reported speech and to describe the ‘future in the past’

- The government denied that its budget cuts would harm education.

- Few of James Joyce’s relatives, during those early years in Dublin, realized that the aspiring writer would become one of the 20th century’s major literary figures.

b in second and third conditional sentences (If we paid in dollars, would we get a discount?)

c for habitual actions in the past (In those days, coal would be transported by barge on canals.)

d in tentative phrases (It would seem that ... Many people would argue that ...)

e in polite phrases (Would you mind lending me your dictionary?).

(See section 11.6 for more examples.)

3 Shall

Shall is quite rare in academic English and sounds very formal. You can occasionally use it instead of will (but only with I or we) to say what you plan to do in an essay or presentation.

For its use in offers and suggestions, see section 11.6.

11.5 test yourself

Complete each sentence with will or would.

1 There __________ appear to be three main objections to the proposed site for a new airport.
2 Marie Stopes’s work in family planning __________ influence the birth control movement throughout the 20th century.
3 This case study __________ describe the ways in which two companies have made significant cutbacks in costs.
4 Some of the competitors’ innovative schemes __________ probably be adopted commercially.
5 It __________ have a huge economic impact if the UK left the European Union.
6 Further progress __________ not be achieved if the funding for inner city projects is reduced.
Modal verbs are regularly used in tutorials, seminars, group work, and presentations. This section covers the semi-modals have got to and be supposed to, and the language of permission, requests, offers, suggestion, and advice.

1 Have got to, be supposed to

Have got to means the same as have to, and in its positive form is more common in spoken English.

• I've got to finish two essays by tomorrow.

In negatives and question forms, however, have to is often preferred.

• You don't have to attend every lecture, you know. (= You haven't got to attend every lecture.)

Be supposed to is used to talk about expectations.

• Are we supposed to take notes?
• Angie was supposed to join our group.

The continuous form often implies criticism.

• You're supposed to be working, aren't you?
  (= You should be working but you clearly aren't.)

2 Permission and requests

To ask for permission to do things, or to request other people to do things, we use can or the more polite could/would (including would you mind + -ing), sometimes adding please or possibly.

• (to tutor) Would it be possible for me to have a short extension on my essay?
• (to classmate) Can I borrow your dictionary for a moment, please?
• (to librarian) Could we possibly leave our bags here for half an hour?
• (to classmate) Would you mind giving out the handouts while I'm starting the presentation?

3 Offers

To make offers, we use Shall I ...?, can/could and sometimes Would you like me to ...?

• (to classmate) Shall I take some notes for you if you can't attend the lecture?
• (to tutor) Would you like me to tell the rest of the group that we'll be in the computer lab?
• (to classmates in group) I could do the introduction to the presentation, if you like.

4 Suggestions and advice

To make suggestions, we use can/could and Shall I/we ...?

• (to classmate) We can do some revision while we're waiting.
• (to classmate) You could try switching the photocopier off and on again.
• (to classmates in group) Shall we prepare some kind of questionnaire?

To give advice or make suggestions, we use can, could, should, and had better. Should is stronger than can/could, and had better is the strongest, suggesting that something negative could happen if we don't act. Notice how we use think and negative question forms to 'soften' suggestions.

• (to classmate) Couldn't/Can't you just take your laptop with you?
• (to classmate rehearsing a presentation) I think you should show those figures on a graph.
• (to classmate) Don't you think you should talk to your personal tutor?
• (to classmates in group) We'd better look at the last case study now, or we'll run out of time.

Had better has a negative form, and the question form is usually negative too.

• You'd better not work all night if you've got an exam tomorrow.
• Hadn't we better leave some time at the end for questions?

11.6 test yourself

Correct each sentence by adding one of the words in the box.

possible could better supposed
has to we I

1 Shall start the presentation by introducing us all?
2 I contact one or two local companies and see if we can do some staff interviews.
3 I believe that society got to take a more pragmatic attitude to the use of drugs.
4 Don't you think we'd look at some non-UK companies too?
5 We're supposed include a bibliography, aren't we?
6 Would it be for me to do my presentation at the end of next week?
7 I thought that the UN forces were to be preventing those sorts of incidents.
8 Could present our work as a poster display?
Challenge yourself

Rewrite the phrases in italics, using the correct form of the word in brackets, to complete the text about logistics.

1. It is possible to illustrate the science of logistics (can) using the sport of climbing.
2. It is necessary for anyone planning a serious expedition to be aware (need) of the importance of transporting, storing, and securing their equipment. A brief survey of mountaineering trips that have failed will reveal how, more often than not, it is a logistical error that has led to defeat. It is possible for modern climbers to use (can) logistics software on their laptops or mobile devices; climbers in pre-computer days were obliged to do (have) their calculations with pen and paper.

A recent unsuccessful attempt on K2 should serve (ought) as an example. It was not necessary for Niles Brangwen and his team to fail (need) if they had allowed time for a second supply of provisions to be transported to the camp below the summit. With extra supplies, it was possible for the two lead climbers to have waited (could) until the weather improved to make their move to the top. After a few days, they succeeded in descending (manage) safely, but there can be little doubt that they regretted (must) this gap in their planning as they made their way homewards.

Circle the correct verb form in the introduction to an essay about retrials. If both are correct, circle both.

For an appeal to be upheld in a court of law, there is a requirement that new evidence could/should be presented. Scientific advances in areas such as DNA testing, however, mean that there is now a growing trend for cases that might/must have remained closed to be considered for retrial. Berenger (2012) cites the case of Maxwell Jordan, who believes he will be able to/could prove his innocence through a report that his lawyers have commissioned from scientists who study the behaviour of bullets.

Jordan's team will argue that he could/must not have fired the gun twice within the period of time described by the prosecuting counsel at his trial. If this new evidence is accepted, it can/should prove persuasive enough to put Jordan's conviction in doubt. This essay might/will explore Jordan's case in more detail.

Circle the correct verb forms in the text about infrastructure projects. If both are correct, circle both.

The location of a new rail system or airport needs to/should take into account the conflicting interests of a number of different groups of people. Politicians in power must/may not benefit immediately from an infrastructure project, but they could/might gain credit in the medium term for a boost in employment when construction work begins. It would/shall seem, on the surface, that the business community in general will/needs to benefit when a major transport project is initiated, but, as in sport, where there are winners there might/must always be losers.

Amongst the public, commentators would/should argue that there are two groups: the general population who must/will often be supportive of modernizing programmes, and those directly affected, the ones whose houses need/ought to be demolished or whose quality of life will/could be reduced by the endless departure and arrival of long-haul jets. Bryson (2009) suggests that thirty or forty years ago, the complaints of this latter group can/would regularly be ignored, whereas these days, a protest movement can/needs to be established and attract public attention within days of a project being announced.
**D** Correct the mistakes in the extract from a text about the work of smaller charities.

Although the charity FoodExpress had only been in operation for two years, most commentators agreed that its senior staff ought have aware that the funding allocated to relief projects in the region was not being effectively monitored. What FoodExpress should not have predicted, however, was the outbreak of fighting that followed the regional elections. Fearing that the conflict will lead to civil war, the charity could withdraw its aid workers, but could not at the same time ensure that money provided for the improvement of infrastructure was prevented from falling into the hands of local warlords. Managers at FoodExpress cannot blame for the ultimate use to which their funds were put, but it could argued that some of the smaller charities working in the developing world lack the hard-won experience of larger and longer-established organizations such as Oxfam and UNICEF.

Grice (2009), on the other hand, takes a slightly different point of view. She suggests that the bigger charities could do more to share the local knowledge they have accumulated, and that they ought not to overlook that it is only by working with smaller charities that all of a region’s needs can satisfy. She commends the work of the Kitchen Tables Charities Trust, which promotes the work of smaller charities, and highlights in her article a series of outcomes that must not have been achieved without their interventions.

**E** Complete the conversation about a group presentation on economic forecasting. More than one answer may be correct.

A We've got all the material we need. It’s just a case of organizing it. 1__________ I begin by introducing us all?

B Sure. Perhaps you 2__________ also outline the whole presentation as normal? And we’re 3__________ to let people know at the beginning when they can ask questions, aren’t we?

C 4__________ we let them ask questions whenever they like?

A I like that idea. If the questions begin to take up too much time, we 5__________ always ask people to wait until the end.

D Would you all 6__________ if I did my piece next, where I look at some of the forecasting disasters? I’ll get really nervous if I have to wait until the end.

A I think that’s fine, Mike. It’ll grab people’s attention. After that, though, we’d 7__________ look at the statistics. Are you OK with that, JoAnne?

B Yes, that’s no problem. But I’ve 8__________ to check my figures with you all. There are a couple of stats that seem to contradict each other.

A OK. We’ll do that later. After your piece on statistics, I 9__________ do mine on the way companies use forecasting, if you like.

C I’m not sure, Ann. Don’t you 10__________ you should finish things off, since you introduced it all?

A All right. That’s fine with me. That means you would go after JoAnne. OK, is there anything we haven’t covered?

D Yes, aren’t we 11__________ to give handouts?

A Well, we don’t 12__________ to, but I think it’s recommended. Would you like me to draft something?

**F** Write 100–200 words about a city or region that has changed significantly in the last fifty years. Consider what the place might now be like without those changes. Discuss what may happen over the next few years. Use as many modal verbs as you can.
The relationship between cause and effect is central to a great deal of academic writing, and may be expressed in a number of different ways. In this unit the language of cause and effect is divided into three types: verbs such as produce, connectors such as therefore, and nouns such as consequence. Effect clauses are highlighted in blue.

Note the following.

1 Either causes or effects may be expressed first in a sentence. The order you choose may depend on which aspect you see as more important, or on the way you decide to arrange your ideas within a paragraph.
   - If we destroy forests, we lose the insects that pollinate food plants. (cause → effect)
   - Brown Brothers of Ontario was able to expand its network of bookshops as a result of a sophisticated campaign of niche marketing. (effect → cause)

2 You can also vary the strength of the link between cause and effect. You could express a weak link by using hedging language such as may or possibly, and a strong link by using emphatic language such as clearly or obviously.
   - Public confidence in European politicians has been eroded over the last thirty years. This may in part be a consequence of the rising power of the media.
   - High levels of taxation in the 1970s were clearly the reason for a number of business people and successful entertainers to seek tax exile outside the UK.

Look at the essay questions (1–5). What do they all have in common? What is the difference in emphasis between question 2 and question 3?

1 Why did the USA enter the Second World War? What were the immediate results?
2 What have been the social consequences of the post-war rise in house ownership in England?
3 Discuss the reasons that led to the development of mass tourism in the UK in the 1960s.
4 What went wrong with the Japanese economy in the 1990s, and how did the country survive as an economic force in the world?
5 Explain how nanomaterials pose a threat to human health.

Suggested answers: see page 203

Other units that deal with cause and effect language are unit 7 Connectors, and unit 17 Conditionals.
12.1 Verbs, cause → effect

12.1 study

1 The verbs *cause, produce, lead to,* and *result in* all have the same meaning, and are used in the middle of sentences to express cause → effect.

* The digital revolution in TV (cause) has caused/produced/led to/resulted in for greater consumer choice. (effect)
* A rise in global oil prices will inevitably cause/produce/lead to/result in higher prices in the shops.

Using the -ing form of these verbs is particularly useful for describing the next step in processes (one step causes or leads to the next step). The following structures are possible.

- **a** Causing something; causing something/someone to do or become something
- **b** Leading to/resulting in something; leading to/resulting in something happening or someone doing something
- **c** Producing something

* The liquid is heated, producing a vapour which is trapped inside a glass cover. The temperature inside the cover is then reduced, causing the vapour to solidify.
* Waves strike a cliff face, leading to cracks and splintering. As time passes, the cracks may grow, ultimately resulting in caves forming where the cliff meets the sea.

2 The verbs *create, bring about,* and *give rise to* also express cause → effect, but are slightly less common.

* Mapping the human genome may eventually create/brought about something (effect) as well as cause (cause) advances in medical treatment.
* A career in a particular field may ultimately result from/stem from the approach taken to the subject by an inspiring teacher at primary level.

Note that the adverbs *ultimately, eventually,* and *inevitably* can precede both of these verbs, or be placed between the verb and the preposition (e.g. *resulting ultimately from*).

2 When there is a simple, factual link between effect and cause, the passive form of the verbs *cause, produce,* or *bring about* are often used.

* Landslides are sometimes caused by/produced by/brought about by mild earth tremors.
* Mills argues that a number of riots have been triggered by the arrest of a member of the local community.

3 You can use the passive form of the verb trigger (from the part of a gun that you pull to make it fire) to suggest an automatic effect or response.

(See section 12.5 for the use of *be* + nouns.)

Note that you can use the adverbs *ultimately, eventually,* and *inevitably* (see examples above) before all these verbs, and also between the verb and the preposition in *lead to, result in,* and *give rise to* (e.g. *resulting ultimately in*).

12.2 Verbs, effect → cause

12.2 study

1 To express effect → cause, you can use *result from* or *stem from.*

* Some forms of abstract art (effect) resulted from/stemmed from early experiments in cubism by the artists Picasso and Braque (cause).
* A career in a particular field may ultimately result from/stem from the approach taken to the subject by an inspiring teacher at primary level.

Note that the adverbs *ultimately* (in the example above), *eventually,* and *inevitably* can precede both of these verbs, or be placed between the verb and the preposition (e.g. *result ultimately from*).

2 When there is a simple, factual link between effect and cause, the passive form of the verbs *cause, produce,* or *bring about* are often used.

* Mills argues that a number of riots have been triggered by the arrest of a member of the local community.

(See section 12.5 for the use of *be* + nouns.)

Note that you can use the adverbs *ultimately, eventually,* and *inevitably* (see examples above) before all these verbs, and also between the verb and the preposition in *lead to, result in,* and *give rise to* (e.g. *resulting ultimately in*).
Complete each sentence with the correct form of the verb in brackets. Add a preposition if necessary.

1. Symptoms that may ___________ (produce) trauma include flashbacks, sleeplessness and periods of intense anger.
2. According to a recent study, most accidents ___________ (result) from carelessness around the house.
3. Lyme disease ___________ (cause) the bite of a tick, which passes bacteria into the bloodstream.
4. An inability to think clearly can ___________ (stem) from a lack of sleep.
5. A period of depression may ___________ (trigger) by a single short event.
6. Hypothermia ___________ (bring) prolonged exposure to extremely low temperatures.

As and since are normally used at the beginning of a sentence to express cause → effect.

1. **As**, since, so, such

   As and since are normally used at the beginning of a sentence to express cause → effect.

   **As / Since** Britain was still recovering from the war, some food products were in short supply.

   (cause)

   (effect)

2. **So ... that, such ... that**

   So and such are useful in expressing cause → effect. So is used before adverbs, adjectives, and quantifiers such as much and few.

   **such** is used before nouns, or adjectives + nouns.

   **Until now there has been such a consistent outcry against genetic testing by insurance companies that no companies have wished to be seen arguing for a change in current practice.**

3. **As a result, consequently, therefore**

   These words and phrases are used between two complete sentences or ideas to express cause → effect.

   • Student feedback criticized the size of seminar groups, saying that there were few opportunities to ask questions. **(cause) As a result / Consequently / Therefore, the course leader decided to set a maximum of fifteen participants.** (effect)

   Note that in the example above you could use a semicolon (;) or *and* rather than a full stop after the word questions. Therefore and consequently can be placed later in the second sentence (**... to ask questions. The course leader therefore / consequently decided to ...**)

   **Tip** So can be used to express cause → effect, but it has a weaker effect and tends to occur in spoken English.

   • **The conflict spread across the country and caused great damage to the infrastructure, as you can see from this slide. But it ended after about six months, so local people were able to return to their villages and start repairing things.**

4. **Which**

   If you want to express a cause → effect link more emphatically, you can use the pattern **which + means that, is why, explains why.**

   • **Arts subsidies were reduced significantly in the 1990s, which is why less popular operas were performed more rarely.** (You could also say which was why, because you are dealing with a past situation.)

   This can be used instead of which, but you need to use a semi-colon or full stop rather than a comma.

   • **Many voters are dissatisfied with the British ‘first past the post’ electoral system. This means that there are always calls for reform.**
12.3 test yourself
Complete each sentence with one word.
Sometimes there is more than one correct answer.

1 Vietnamese fighters were able to move with ________ speed through the jungle that US commanders were forced to request additional air support.

2 It is difficult to measure a leader's success without taking into account the state of the business at the time of his or her appointment. Benton ________ created a points system for assessing a company's position at a given time.

3 ________ the new drug had unexpected side effects, it was withdrawn from general use.

4 The Chernobyl nuclear plant did not have a confinement shell, which ________ that radiation escaped into the atmosphere.

5 Computers with internet access are now a common feature in most households; ________ a result, there has been a steady decline in the sale of printed reference books such as encyclopedias.

6 There are ________ many ecological problems facing the Aral Sea that it is unlikely to survive in its present form.

12.4 Connectors (due to, etc.)

12.4 study
This section gives more examples of connectors that are used to show cause and effect. See also the previous section (12.3).

1 Due to, as a result of
You can use these phrases (followed by a noun or -ing form of a verb) to express cause → effect if you place them first in the sentence (with a comma afterwards), or to express effect → cause if placed in the middle.
• Due to/As a result of overcultivation, (cause) the soil no longer contains enough nutrients. (effect)
  = The soil no longer contains enough nutrients (effect) due to/as a result of overcultivation. (cause)

Note that owing to, as a consequence of, and on account of can all be used in the same way.

2 If
You can also express cause → effect and effect → cause with if.
• If managers are allowed to control their budgets, (cause) their motivation levels will inevitably rise. (effect)
  = Managers' motivation levels will inevitably rise (effect) if they are allowed to control their budgets. (cause)

(See unit 17 Conditionals for more information on the use of if.)

3 Because of, because
Because of (followed by a noun or the -ing form of a verb) can be used in the middle of a sentence, where it has the same meaning as due to and as a result of, to express effect → cause.
• A series of important discoveries was made at the end of the century (effect) because of a number of laboratory accidents, (cause) rather than any carefully organized progress.

Because (before clauses) is normally used in the middle of a sentence to express effect → cause.
• Residents have tended to leave these inner city areas because crime rates have risen.

Due to/owing to/on account of + the fact that means the same as because, but highlights the effect → cause relationship more emphatically.
• Investors began to sell their shares due to the fact that fighting had broken out in several of the company's key mining regions.

12.4 test yourself
Correct each sentence by adding one word.

1 Diseases such as cholera are now likely in the refugee camps because a lack of sanitation.

2 A number of mistakes were made account of the fact that no trained medical staff were present.

3 An employee remains in a particularly stressful post for a prolonged period, 'burnout' can occur.

4 'Technostress' is the term used by some medical practitioners to describe symptoms such as headaches and anxiety which occur in adolescents as a result of computer games.

5 During the Great Depression farmers moved to California they had been told there were jobs there.

6 Due to a lack of exercise and poor diet, childhood obesity is now common in the developed world.
12.5 Nouns

12.5 study

Academic English often prefers sentences based around nouns. (See 4.1 on page 039 in unit 4 Being formal and informal for more information.) There are a number of nouns, including cause and effect themselves, that are useful for talking about causes and effects, usually with the verb be. Note the prepositions used after each noun.

1 Nouns like cause

cause of, reason for, source of

• One obvious reason for the high level of unemployment in the town is the recent closure of an electronics company with a workforce of around 800.

Another useful noun is factor, which can be used with contribute to, lead to, give rise to, and result in.

• Bank failures and the stock market crash of 1929 are two of the key factors that contributed to the Great Depression in the USA.

Useful adjectives that collocate with cause, reason, source, and factor are fundamental, key, main, obvious, possible, and underlying.

2 Nouns like effect

effect of, result of, consequence of, outcome of

• One likely effect of the search for better regulatory control of banks will be a clear split between the high-street function, sometimes called ‘retail banking’, and the risk-taking element that has caused so much of the recent controversy.

• Environmental damage to some of the last wildernesses of the Earth, such as Alaska and the Antarctic, is a possible consequence of the endless search for new sources of oil.

Useful adjectives that collocate with effect, result, consequence, and outcome are beneficial, desirable, inevitable, likely, possible, probable, and unfortunate.

12.5 test yourself

Correct each sentence by adding a preposition.

1. High blood pressure is a possible result an excessive intake of salt in the diet.
2. The main reason the female leopard’s behaviour may have been the proximity of her newly-born cubs.
3. There are several consequences people living longer, one of which is the raising of the age of retirement.
4. It is not always possible to establish the underlying cause mental illness.
5. Factors that contribute poor performance at interviews include inadequate communication skills and an inability to demonstrate skills through the use of appropriate examples.
6. One inevitable outcome the growth of internet fraud is the creation of companies selling security software.

12 Talking about cause and effect
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>cause</strong> → <strong>effect</strong></th>
<th><strong>effect</strong> → <strong>cause</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>verbs (12.1)</td>
<td>verbs (12.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cause</td>
<td>result from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>produce</td>
<td>stem from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lead to</td>
<td>be brought about by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>result in</td>
<td>be caused by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>create</td>
<td>be produced by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring about</td>
<td>be triggered by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give rise to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connectors (12.3 and 12.4)</td>
<td>connectors (12.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As ...</td>
<td>... because of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Since ...</td>
<td>because ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>so/such ... that ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As a result, ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consequently, ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Therefore, ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>which/this means that ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>which/this is why ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>which/this explains why ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Due to ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As a result of ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Owing to ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As a consequence of ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On account of ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>... due to ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>... as a result of ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>... due to/owing to/on account of + the fact that ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>... if ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'effect' nouns (12.5)</td>
<td>'cause' nouns (12.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>effect of</td>
<td>cause of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>result of</td>
<td>reason for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consequence of</td>
<td>source of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outcome of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Rewrite the sentences, following the instructions in brackets.

1. Continuous **evaluation** of any new training course enables the organizers to measure its success in detail. (start with *If a new training course ...*)

2. War and the resulting political turmoil are causing an acute shortage of food. (start with *One consequence ...*)

3. Stein (2007) argues that due to the lack of print archives in modern governmental department offices, there has been a kind of institutional memory loss. (use the verb *result*)

4. The reunification of the two Koreas would lead to a surge southwards of economic **migrants** from the (former) communist state, according to Masefield (2010). (use triggered by)

5. The hiring of **professional** negotiators was partly responsible for the successful conclusion of the deal. (start with *One factor ...* and use the verb *contribute*)

6. The cause of high fish mortality was a dioxin spill further up the river. (use the verb *lead*)

7. The experiment with advertising **methods** brought about a noticeable change in the demographics of Centra’s customers. (start with *One outcome ...*)

8. Tax cuts, in the view of Conway (2009), may be a **source** of medium-term economic growth. (use the verb *stem*)

---

Complete the text by adding the number of words in brackets. Pay attention to the punctuation. There may be more than one correct answer. If you need help, refer to the box following the text.

There is no doubt that the special **export zones (SEZs)** set up in developing countries 1 **__________** (three words) new jobs. Essentially, what happens is that the host government establishes a miniature tax ‘island’ 2 **__________** (one word) such havens tend to attract foreign companies wishing to contract out their manufacturing. Klein (2005), however, is critical of some SEZs which, 3 **__________** (two words) of the strict rules imposed on their employees, operate in a similar way, she argues, to the slave plantations of early America.

For example, any laws permitting unionization are in effect **suspended** and, 4 **__________**, (three words), employees have little or no protection.

In some of these factories, the safety record is 5 **__________** (one word) bad 6 **__________** (one word) no experienced workers will stay for long. 7 **__________** (two words) that the workforce continues to be underskilled.

It is a classic example of the chicken and egg paradigm: inexperienced employees have more accidents, 8 **__________** (one word) better workers to stay away; and 9 **__________** (one word) the situation never improves.

Nonetheless, SEZs remain popular with the governments of many developing countries 10 **__________** (one word) of the industry and employment they attract. this means that give rise to on account consequently because (*x2*) as a result so causing
C Link the ideas, following the instructions in brackets. You may need to change the order of the ideas. There may be more than one correct answer.

1. a rising level of childhood asthma/the pollution generated by road vehicles (start with One probable result ...)
2. Very little rain fell in the early part of the year/the government banned people from using domestic hosepipes (use explains)
3. pedestrians are unable to reach their destinations/some new urban roads are built without pavements (start with Since ...)
4. the huge size of the United States/the disparate attitudes of the American people (use caused and the hedging verb may)
5. There has been public anger over tax avoidance schemes/parliament has tightened the appropriate financial regulations. (use such)
6. The marketing department was forced to make three account managers redundant/it overspent its budget. (start with As a consequence ...)
7. an economic collapse finally followed/under-regulation allowed some banks to make risky loans/there was uncertainty in the financial markets when the loans were not repaid (use producing and then causing)
8. people have less disposable income/charities may suffer during a recession (use due and fact in the middle of your sentence)

D Write a short text describing the causes of Japan's 'lost decade' in the 1990s. Use the notes, which show causes —> effects, and language from unit 12 [e.g. bring about, lead to, produce, cause something to happen, as a result of].
• falls in real estate value and bad bank loans (late 1980s) —> rapid drop in prices; period of economic stagnation
• continuing deflation —> the government reduced interest rates to zero (early 1990s) —> but no revival in the country's economic fortunes (which continued to decline throughout the 1990s)
• the global slowdown in the closing year of the millennium —> signs of improvement in the Japanese economy (towards the end of the 1990s) were short-lived.

E Write a short text describing the effects of hypothermia. Use the notes, which show effects —> causes in chronological order, and language from unit 12 [e.g. be caused by, result from, consequence of, outcome of].
1. violent shivering —> the body's need to produce heat
2. mild confusion —> a decrease in blood pressure and heart rate
3. lips, ears, fingers, and toes may become blue —> the body's attempt to draw warm blood back towards the vital organs
4. victims will find it almost impossible to walk or use their hands —> the closing down of the body's metabolic systems

F Write 150-250 words about an organization in trouble, the reasons for its difficulties, and the consequences of its actions. You may want to think of a business that went [or nearly went] bankrupt, or a political defeat. Use cause and effect linking language at least five times. (There is a useful summary on page 113.)
Introduction

A verb can be followed by one of four major types of clause.

1. infinitive with or without to clause
   - Managers must trust their staff, or they will fail to get the best out of them.

2. -ing clause
   - Edward Kennedy delayed reporting the car crash that led to the death of Mary Jo Kopechne.

3. that clause
   - Some bankers believe that their profession is frequently misrepresented in the press.

4. wh- clause (wh- = what, when, where, which, who, why or how)
   - Critics cannot always explain why some films seem to strike a chord with the public.

This unit gives examples of common verbs that are used in the four patterns described above. Some verbs are frequently used in more than one pattern, and these will be listed more than once. Other verbs may be used frequently in one pattern and less frequently in others. These will only be listed according to the pattern in which they are most frequently used. Note that sometimes the meaning of the verb changes when it is used in a different pattern.

Verbs are generally listed alphabetically, although words which are closely related in meaning are grouped together at the beginning of each list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb pattern</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Verb + infinitive with to</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Verb + infinitive without to</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Verb + -ing form</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Verb + that or wh-</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other units that deal with verbs are unit 11 Modal verbs, and unit 15 Phrasal and prepositional verbs.
13.1 Verb + infinitive with to or -ing form

13.1 study

Verbs in this section can be followed by an infinitive with to or an -ing form.

1 No change in meaning

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Infinitive with to</th>
<th>Infinitive with -ing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>begin to do</td>
<td>begin doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>start</td>
<td>start to do</td>
<td>start doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>love</td>
<td>love to do</td>
<td>love doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prefer</td>
<td>prefer to do</td>
<td>prefer doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>like</td>
<td>like to do</td>
<td>like doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hate</td>
<td>hate to do</td>
<td>hate doing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These verbs can be followed by the infinitive with to, or the -ing form, with no change in meaning.

- As the recession of the early 1990s began biting/to bite, companies looked for immediate savings in their daily costs.
- Most office workers hate to feel/feeling that their contribution to the overall success of the company is being overlooked.

Note that would + like, love, prefer, or hate always takes the infinitive with to.

- However much a successful research scientist would prefer to claim all the credit for a new discovery, the likelihood is that it has resulted from a team effort.

**Tip** Two -ing forms are not used together.

- Davo plc was beginning enjoying to enjoy some success when the UK entered a period of sustained recession.

2 Different meaning

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Infinitive with to</th>
<th>Infinitive with -ing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>remember</td>
<td>remember doing</td>
<td>remember to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forget to do</td>
<td>forget doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stop</td>
<td>stop doing</td>
<td>stop to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>try</td>
<td>try to do</td>
<td>try doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go on</td>
<td>go on to do</td>
<td>go on doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean</td>
<td>mean to do</td>
<td>mean doing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Whether you use the infinitive with to, or the -ing form after these verbs depends on the meaning. The pairs of examples below show the difference.

- Small businesses should remember to seek guidance before placing job advertisements in order to ensure that they do not contravene the existing legislation on discrimination. (= not forget)
- Most tourist remember staying in a hotel that did not meet their expectations. The difference nowadays is that accommodation can be vetted in advance through the use of consumer-driven websites. (= have a memory)

- The difficulty arises when a junior doctor who has been on duty for eighteen hours forgets to check that a patient is, for example, allergic to penicillin. (= not remember)
- Most people will never forget buying their first car. The challenge to the trader is to replicate that excitement when consumers are selecting their tenth vehicle. (= not have a memory)

- If an employee cannot stop to take a reasonable lunch break, their work may suffer in the afternoon. (= stop doing one thing in order to do another)
- GlaxoWellcome plc stopped trading under that name in 2000, when it merged with SmithKline Beecham plc to become GlaxoSmithKline. (= finish doing something)

- Madeleine Albright spent four years as US Ambassador to the United Nations. She then went on to become the first female US Secretary of State in 1997. (= do one thing after another)
- (in a presentation) I could go on talking about the various interpretations of Kafka's The Trial for several hours, but I want to leave some time for questions, so I'll finish there. (= continue doing something)

- BP has tried to repair some of the damage done to its reputation in the USA following its response to the Deepwater Horizon oil spill. (= attempt)
- A group of families in Maine tried living without their computers or mobile phones for a month. (= experiment)

- Cadbury's claimed that it did not mean to insult the model Naomi Campbell in an advertisement that seemed to compare her to a bar of chocolate. (= intend)
- Going global in a real sense means understanding how business works across cultural boundaries. (= that is the consequence).
Circle the correct option. If both are correct, circle both.

1 If patients stopped to take/taking this drug, it would put them at risk of a heart attack.
2 The legislation was meant to discourage traders from buying illegally-acquired copper.
3 The ‘Hayflick limit’ is the point at which cells no longer continue to divide/dividing.
4 None of the witnesses remembered seeing/to see the helicopter drop before it exploded.
5 Many business people travel because they prefer doing/to do business face-to-face.
6 Despite early setbacks, Lowton plc went on winning/to win the UK’s largest defence contract of 2009.
7 The research team noted the exact moment when the subject would start to hesitate/hesitating before replying.
8 Some householders have tried lowering/to lower their heating thermostats by two degrees to save energy.

The BBC’s foreign correspondent pretended to be touring the sites, when she was actually interviewing local inhabitants of the region.

At several points during the night, both sides in the negotiations threatened to walk out.

The 02 development appears to have succeeded, where the Millennium Experience – the original purpose of the dome – failed commercially and in the public mind.

Note the use of the perfect infinitive (the past form) in the last example, and the continuous infinitive in the example about the BBC foreign correspondent.

2 Usually with an object

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>allow</th>
<th>advise</th>
<th>persuade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>permit</td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>remind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permit</td>
<td>encourage</td>
<td>teach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td>force</td>
<td>tell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invite</td>
<td>warn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These verbs are normally followed by an object and an infinitive with to.

• Although the police persuaded the protestors to leave Parliament Square quite quickly, the march had a significant effect on public opinion.
• Some commentators warned Marks and Spencer not to expand into the USA in the late 1980s.
• American soldiers allowed photographers to enter some parts of Helmand, but advised them to hire security guards from one of the local agencies.
• A sophisticated computer model enables the likely deterioration pattern of a new building to be examined.

Note the use of the passive infinitive in the example above, and the negative infinitive in the Marks and Spencer example.

3 Sometimes with an object

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ask</th>
<th>help</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>beg</td>
<td>intend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expect</td>
<td>want</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These verbs sometimes have an object.

• Universities expect most academics to have a research interest and to publish articles or books in that area.
• The British company Dyson Ltd expected to attract criticism when it moved production overseas.

The verbs in this group can be followed by an infinitive with to, and do not normally take an object.

• No prime minister can afford to ignore the mistakes made by his or her predecessors.
• We need to consider first of all the various types of protest that a modern government can face in Europe.
Complete each sentence, using the past form of one of the verbs in the box.

help, manage, invite, refuse, remind, agree

1. Professor Curnick _______ her team not to talk to journalists from the medical press during the drug trial.
2. Selco only _______ to survive the recession by selling its assets in Spain.
3. When Muhammad Ali _______ to serve in the US Army during the Vietnam War, his boxing licence was immediately revoked.
4. When he finally _______ to be interviewed by the BBC, Tony Hayward, former chief executive of BP, admitted that he had made mistakes in his handling of the oil spill in the Gulf.
5. In 1993 Louis Herman _______ Adam Pack to join him in establishing the Dolphin Institute.
6. Cyclist Gino Bartali was honoured by Israel because he had _______ Jews to avoid deportation to concentration camps during the Second World War.

Test yourself

Complete each sentence, using one of the words in the box.

would, let, made, must, will, watch

1. Chemicals can be _______ to react through the input of an energy source such as heat.
2. I _______ rather take all questions at the end of the presentation, if you don’t mind.
3. This essay _______ explore the organizational differences between Apple Inc. and Microsoft Corporation.
4. Observers at the aquarium are able to _______ octopuses feeding on crab.
5. There were reports that the hospital had _______ patients lie unattended in corridors for up to eight hours.
6. Foreign companies _______ float at least 50% of their shares if they wish to be considered for the FTSE’s UK indices.

Verb + infinitive without to

Three small groups of verbs are followed by the infinitive without to.

1. **Modal verbs** (can, could, may, might, must, ought to, shall, should, will, would)
   - Some politicians have argued that print media should fall under the same kind of regulatory control as broadcast media.

2. **Let, make, had better, would rather**
   - (in a presentation) If we let sixteen-year-olds vote, they may develop a long-lasting interest in politics.
   - Recent opinion polls show that most Americans would rather their government cut spending than enter into any new programme of stimulus investment.
   - (in a seminar) We'd better move the discussion on to unemployment statistics, or we'll run out of time.
   - The assumption that water metering would make the public save water is difficult to argue against.
13.4 Verb + -ing form

13.4 study

These verbs can all be followed by -ing forms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>acknowledge</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>admit</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deny</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enjoy</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel like</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anticipate</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appreciate</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avoid</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consider</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>describe</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discuss</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enjoy</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finish</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give up</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delay</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postpone</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put off</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imagine</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>involve</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>justify</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mention</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(not) mind</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miss</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>practise</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>propose</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resist</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>risk</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suggest</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Staff induction normally involves meeting colleagues, touring the premises, and receiving an ID card.
- Officials at Alder Hey Children's Hospital in Liverpool admitted storing the organs of children who had died at the hospital between 1988 and 1995 without the permission of parents.
- Restaurant customers may resent being presented with a service charge option when paying by credit card if service has already been included in the bill.
- In his autobiographical book What Mad Pursuit, Francis Crick describes leaving the field of molecular biology for neuroscience.

Note the passive form in the restaurant example, and note also that all of these verbs could be followed by a noun instead of an -ing form (Francis Crick describes the change in his research focus from molecular biology to neuroscience).

13.4 test yourself

Correct each sentence by adding one of the words in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Not offering</th>
<th>on being losing delayed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Fundraisers fear that if the arts centre carries making a loss, it will be closed by the end of the year.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Zantec plc launching its new smartphone when rumours circulated that it had a serious design fault.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Most new companies must anticipate money in their first year of business.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Some local authorities acknowledge having the funding capacity to offer hostel space to the majority of the homeless people in their area.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Companies which do not innovate risk overtaken by their competitors.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Dyson has proposed research and development tax credits to technology start-ups.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

13.5 Verb + that or wh-

13.5 study

Many verbs connected with speaking and thinking can be followed by that or wh- clauses (clauses beginning with what, when, where, whether, which, who, why, or how). These verbs offer useful ways of reporting what people have written or said. With that and wh- clauses, you can change the subject or use a modal verb (which you cannot do with infinitive and -ing forms).

- The prime minister at the time denied offering honours to business associates in an inappropriate manner. (that clause; change of subject possible)
- The prime minister at the time denied that his secretary had offered honours to business associates in an inappropriate manner. (that clause; change of subject)

1 Verbs that can be followed by that and wh- clauses include:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>consider</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discover</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>explain</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imagine</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>note</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remember</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>notice</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>real</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>observe</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understand</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
- Wanafeller notes that small-scale or peasant agriculture still feeds a majority of the population in countries such as Vietnam.
- Commentators considered what the news of the CEO’s arrest would mean for the company’s share price.
- Several recent studies have shown why good mental health is facilitated by regular exercise.
- Some office managers may decide that the best way of sharing information is to write everything down.
- Liechtenstein’s size means that it always runs the risk of being overlooked by its more powerful neighbours.
- In this essay, I will try to explain how one or more of the business models suggested by Handy can fit together in the same organization.

2 Verbs followed by that clauses, but not normally by wh- clauses include:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verbs</th>
<th>Verbs</th>
<th>Verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>admit</td>
<td>appear</td>
<td>argue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deny</td>
<td>seem</td>
<td>contend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assert</td>
<td>insist</td>
<td>assume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>claim</td>
<td>maintain</td>
<td>suppose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agree</td>
<td>expect</td>
<td>recommend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>feel</td>
<td>remind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>complain</td>
<td>hope</td>
<td>reply</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conclude</td>
<td>imply</td>
<td>suspect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>demand</td>
<td>pretend</td>
<td>threaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doubt</td>
<td>promise</td>
<td>warn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Warrander asserts that most of London’s hospitality industry should be classed as part of the UK’s invisible exports.
- The predominant model of health insurance assumes that at least one member of the household is in employment.
- Klein’s trenchant observation is that companies based in Europe and the US now put all of their energies into marketing and branding their goods, rather than manufacturing them.

**Tip**: It is grammatically possible to omit the word that in most verb + that clauses, but it is more common to do so in informal than in academic English.
A Complete the text about the setting up of small art galleries, using the infinitive or -ing form of the verb in brackets.

Browne (2008) describes ______________(set up) a small art gallery in an unfashionable part of Birmingham in 2003. She acknowledges ______________(spend) much more than the business earned in the first few years, but explains how it was managing ______________(make) a modest profit by the end of 2006. Her account and that of Bannister and Ives (2009) appear ______________(suggest) that two key factors need to be borne in mind if the new gallery owner wishes to avoid ______________(make) what could be a very costly mistake.

For anyone planning ______________(open) a small gallery, the first factor is financing. Browne warns the would-be owner ______________(allow) enough capital for at least two years of trading before any significant income is generated. The second factor is location. Bannister and Ives considered ______________(establish) their gallery in London’s trendy Brick Lane before realizing that there would be too much competition. They carried on ______________(look) elsewhere in London until colleagues in Wales encouraged them ______________(acquire) empty retail premises at much lower cost in Newport. Now, with a National Lottery regeneration grant, they anticipate ______________(expand) their gallery into neighbouring premises.

B Circle the correct option to complete the text about embedded journalists.

One of the Pentagon’s successes during the initial stages of the war in Iraq was to ______________(argue/persuade/demand) news organizations to accept the concept of the ‘embedded’ journalist, who would ______________(operate/to operate/operate) under the protection of a battlefield unit. Newspapers and TV networks could not afford ______________(turn/that they turn/turning) down this opportunity to witness the conflict at close hand, but many reporters ______________(discussed/wondered/suspected) that the challenge of remaining independent and impartial might prove insurmountable.

Dillow (2005) remembers ______________(spending/to spend/spend) his first three days as an ‘embed’ on his stomach, as his unit defended itself against heavy enemy fire. On more frequent occasions, however, when soldiers who ______________(prefer/would rather/want) see action have nothing to do except polish their rifles and ______________(maintain) their vehicles, Dillow ______________(confirms/reminds/discusses) that an embedded reporter gains a fascinating insight into the daily life of men and women at war.

C Correct the mistakes in the text about websites based on consumer reviews.

Some sentences have more than one mistake.

Some websites enable that consumers post reviews of services or products in such a way that they can be easily searched and read by the general public. This normally means to accept all the reviews that are submitted, except for those that a website manager decides to block on the grounds of their obviously abusive nature. Cannon (2009) contends this phenomenon to produce, particularly in the area of hotel and restaurant reviewing, a new breed of consumer who appears spending his or her life touring the country as an amateur critic. Such consumers may explain that they are doing in terms of public service, but they may well risk undermining the original purpose of this type of website. Cann goes on discussing the recent difficulties experienced by TripAdvisor, where hotel owners have threatened that they take legal action against the site for not screening out this new type of full-time amateur critic.
D Complete the discussion about bargaining between four students, using the words in the box. Two of the words are not needed.

when why which better rather watch wait might expect contend enjoy accept let

A Bargaining, or haggling, is something that British consumers just aren’t used to.
B I know what you mean, but it depends on 1__________ sector you’re talking about, doesn’t it? For example, people 2__________ to bargain when they’re buying a house, don’t they?
C That’s true, and if you go into an antiques shop, the owner will usually 3__________ you make an offer.
A OK, I 4__________ that there are a limited number of contexts where you can try to lower a price, but it’s not nearly as common in the UK as it is in places like Indonesia.
B And that helps to explain 5__________ British tourists find it so difficult in markets abroad!
D That’s true, but if they understood the culture of haggling they 6__________ find it easier.
C What do you mean?
D Well, if you 7__________ a trader selling something, you’ll notice that the first step is to establish a relationship with the customer and then ‘create value’ around the product.
B Whereas the tourist would 8__________ hear a starting price immediately!
D Exactly. They need to relax, and then they might actually 9__________ haggling.
A And if they can’t, they’d 10__________ find a fixed price shop, hadn’t they?
D Sure. But even there, the owners often don’t mind 11__________ you put in an offer.

E Circle the correct option to complete the text about the legal aspects of international projects. If both are correct, circle both.

Sito and Mayer (2011) show 1how/that a lack of legal preparation can lead international companies into difficulty, and a close reading of their study may explain 2what/why Ronson Capital Enterprises (RCE) was forced 3suspending/to suspend construction for nine months at the Sunshine leisure complex in the Nha Trang region of Vietnam.

When RCE began 4to build/building the Sunshine complex in 2007, they assumed their lawyers 5had/to have completed the necessary land purchases. Later in the year, however, two local farmers refused 6allowing/to allow bulldozers to enter a strip of land south of the river, claiming 7that/why they had never agreed to sell their property.

As the legal dispute unfolded, it appeared that RCE accepted as early as 2009 8when/that they would not be able to open on schedule in 2012. Gallo (2012) discusses in detail 9what/that went wrong, and suggests 10that/how developers planning similar projects in Southeast Asia can learn lessons for the future. His recommendations can be found in the conclusion to this report.

F Write 150–250 words about a well-known person who has recovered from a serious setback in their professional or personal life. Use some of the verbs you have studied in this unit.
Introduction

In academic writing you need to make it clear when you are expressing a claim or opinion as opposed to a fact. The best way of doing this is to distance yourself to some extent from the claim by 'hedging' (i.e. using less direct language in order to make your views more measured and cautious).

In this unit, the following hedging techniques are covered.

1. The use of hedging verbs such as *appear* and *tend*.
   - *British shoppers do not appear to care* where their food comes from as long as it is cheap.

2. The use of hedging adverbs such as *arguably* and *fairly*.
   - *Internet Protocol Television is arguably the most interesting new media development.*

3. Using *that* clauses to hedge.
   - *It is widely accepted that the Athenians of Ancient Greece formed the world's first democracy.*

4. The use of the language of probability.
   - *We may require a different model of social mobility if we are to establish a truly egalitarian society.*

5. The use of hedging expressions.
   - *On balance, patients require years of support before they can overcome post-traumatic stress disorders.*

Note that another way of hedging is to make your claim less personal by referring to other authorities (*Samson believes that ...*). The use of direct quotation is covered in unit 6 *Stating facts and opinions*, and the use of paraphrasing is covered in unit 16 *Paraphrasing*.

**Unit contents**

1. Hedging verbs page 125
2. Hedging adverbs page 126
3. Using *that* clauses page 127
4. Expressing probability page 128
5. Hedging expressions page 129
14.1 Hedging verbs

1. **Appear, seem, look**

By placing the emphasis on appearance, these verbs introduce an element of doubt.

- There **appears to be** a connection between adolescent vegetarianism and eating disorders.
  
  (The use of appears to be rather than is implies that the connection has not definitely been proven.)

Appear and seem can both be used with the infinitive with to or it + that ...

- People appear to enjoy/seem to enjoy the autonomy of arranging their own holidays. (Or It appears that/seems that people enjoy ...)

All three verbs can be used with It + as if/though.

- **It looks/appears/seems as if** an agreement between the two sides will be reached at the summit in November.

2. **Tend**

As a hedging device, tend is used with the infinitive with to to introduce the idea that this is the way in which people or things normally (but not always) behave.

- Supporters of the Encyclopaedia Britannica **tend to claim** that the quality of its trained staff ensures a higher standard of research than that of Wikipedia. (This is allowing for more flexibility in behaviour than saying Supporters of the Encyclopaedia Britannica claim that the quality ...)

- Destructive divisions within political parties **tend to emerge** when they have been in power for more than ten years.

**Tip** The noun tendency can be used instead of the verb (There is a tendency for destructive divisions to emerge ... or Destructive divisions have a tendency to emerge ...).

3. **Suggest, indicate, estimate**

All three of these verbs are weaker in meaning than verbs such as conclude, state, confirm, prove, or demonstrate, and can therefore be useful in hedging.

- A 2005 study by the journal Nature, however, **suggested/indicated** that although the structure of some of the scientific material in Wikipedia was poor, its accuracy was similar to that of the Encyclopaedia Britannica.

Estimate tends to be used for numbers, statistics, etc.

- Historians have **estimated** that up to 90% of the indigenous population died from the diseases introduced by European invaders and then settlers.

4. **Contribute, help**

The verb phrases contribute to + noun or -ing form and help + infinitive with to can be useful in hedging, because they suggest that the subject is probably not the only factor involved. Note that help tends to be used where there are positive outcomes.

- Most commentators agree that deregulation **contributed to** the banking crisis of 2008. (Deregulation was not the only cause, but it was one of the causes.)

- For a small organization with limited resources, **electronic storage helps to** reduce costs.

### 14.1 test yourself

Rewrite these sentences as hedged statements, using the words in brackets and making any other changes necessary.

1. It has been stated that 25% of homeless adults suffer from some form of mental illness. (estimated)
2. The practice of short selling brought about the collapse of Lehman Brothers. (contributed)
3. Drought is the major problem in some parts of Sub-Saharan Africa. (appears)
4. Wasps with a greater number of black spots on their heads are more aggressive, according to research. (tend)
5. The report concludes that in some parts of the country bipolar disorder is being overdiagnosed. (indicates)
6. Smaller electronics companies are doing better than their larger rivals. (looks)
The adverbs in this section can all be used to reduce the certainty of your statement or make your meaning less extreme.

1 *Apparently, arguably, etc.*

Here is a selection of adverbs that you can use to express a degree of doubt.

- *apparently* = it appears that, it is apparent that
- *approximately* = not completely accurate; also *roughly*
- *arguably* = it could be argued that
- *reasonably* = fairly, to some extent
- *relatively* = fairly, when compared to other similar things or situations
- *reportedly* = it is reported that
- *supposedly* = it is supposed that, people suppose that, it is generally believed that
- *typically* = normally, usually
- *not necessarily* = not always

- The fact that a word is apparently untranslatable does not necessarily mean that it should be left in the original language.
- It seems reasonably certain that greater regulation of banking practice will follow what was arguably the biggest financial crisis since the depression of the 1930s.
- Bolivia’s mountains have rendered it relatively safe from invasion.

2 *Slightly, fairly, quite, rather*

These adverbs are typically used to make adjectives weaker. *Slightly* is the weakest. *Rather* is the least weak, and normally expresses surprise or a negative opinion. *Slightly* and *rather* can be used with comparative adjectives and adverbs, unlike *fairly* and *quite*. Note that *quite* comes before *a/an.*

- American and Canadian footballs may look the same, but the sizes are slightly different.
- It is, however, rather more difficult to understand why, on an objective level, some convicted murderers are kept for longer in prison than others. (*rather + comparative adjective, not fairly more difficult or quite more difficult*)
- The two leaders had a rather tense meeting. (*negative opinion*)
- Politicians sometimes argue that it is quite an easy/a fairly easy step from soft to hard drug use.

3 *Sometimes, normally, usually, etc.*

Adverbs of frequency can be useful in making a statement more cautious.

- A specification for a new post is usually written by the new employee’s line manager.

14.2 test yourself

Circle the most appropriate option. In two sentences, two options are appropriate.

1 The US economy grew fairly/slightly/approximately faster in the first quarter than was expected.
2 Mature students do not reasonably/rather/necessarily manage their deadlines better than younger colleagues.
3 The transition from prison life to ordinary society is fairly/quite/relatively a difficult one.
4 Although it works faster than other treatments, the new drug is relatively/approximately/reportedly expensive to produce.
5 Smaller shops quite/normally/reasonably suffer a decline in trade when a supermarket opens nearby.
6 Physical exercise relatively/supposedly/roughly reduces the symptoms of mild depression.
7 Third-year undergraduate courses typically/fairly/usually cover less ground in greater depth than the first two years.
8 Groundnut oil is similar in character but approximately/quite/rather more expensive than grapeseed oil.
9 There are approximately/reasonably/relatively 100 billion neurons in the human brain.
10 In pollution control, it is apparently/quite/sometimes impossible to establish a firm link between a specific event, such as a leak of chemicals, and harm to the local population.
14.3 Using that clauses

14.3 study

You can use several types of impersonal that clause to distance yourself from an argument or point of view. Note that the phrases below are only ‘semi-fixed’ in that you can, for example, change a verb such as suggest to show or indicate.

1 It ... that ...

Using It ... (sometimes called the ‘empty’ or ‘preparatory’ subject) allows you to avoid phrases such as I would argue that ... Here are some examples of ways to open your sentences.

- It is widely accepted
- It has been argued
- It is possible to argue
- It has been suggested
- It seems fair to say

- It has been argued that the reunification of the two Koreas would eventually be of benefit to both.
- It seems fair to point out that most of these new jobs have been created in the low-paid, part-time sector.

(See unit 9 Passives for passive forms of reporting verbs such as It is believed ... and ... is reported to ...)

2 Reference to studies, etc.

- The latest research appears to show/indicate
- Studies show/have shown
- The evidence suggests
- Statistics demonstrate/have demonstrated
- Published sources indicate

- Studies have demonstrated that good mental health is facilitated by physical exercise.
- The evidence suggests that low prices and convenience continue to drive the food industry in the main.

3 Reference to other people

- Most people agree
- Some people say
- Many taxpayers feel
- Most economists argue

- Most people agree that there are certain freedoms that all democracies should possess.
- Most economists argue that ‘boom and bust’ cycles are the most damaging features of the post-war years.

14.3 test yourself

A Correct each sentence by adding one of the words or phrases in the box.

- been to argue demonstrated would
- would say appears to

1 The latest research indicate that the picture was painted by Michelangelo.

2 Most people that it is normally wrong to lie.

3 It is possible that economic sanctions rarely achieve their primary purpose.

4 Statistics have that the life expectancy gap between men and women is shortening in Canada.

5 It has suggested that schizophrenia should be regarded as a collection of disorders.

B Correct the mistakes in the sentences. Note that some sentences may be correct.

1 It seems fair conclude that private finance initiatives (PFIs) in the public health sector have suffered in some instances from poor project management.

2 The evidences would suggest that stricter regulation of online loan companies is required.

3 It has been argue that the process of globalization should ultimately reduce global inequalities.

4 Published sources indicate that 43 journalists were imprisoned during the regime’s first year in power.

5 Many medical practitioners would argue that assisted suicide is never justified.

6 It has widely accepted that a good reputation is one of the most important assets that a company possesses.
14.4 Expressing probability

14.4 study

Using the language of probability rather than certainty allows you to be cautious about the past, present, and future.

1 Can, may, might, and could

These modal verbs can all be used to say that something is possible rather than definite. Can, may, might, and could can all be used to talk about the present. Could and might are more cautious than can and may.

- There can be a number of reasons why a particular group of people resist new scientific theories. (This is more cautious than There are a number of reasons ...)

- We might see a significant rise in the repossession of houses as mortgage holders become unable to make their monthly repayments. (This is more cautious than We will see ...)

- The patients could have recovered more quickly if they had been given counselling as well as medication. (This is more cautious than The patients would have recovered ...)

TIP Possible (adj.), possibly (adv.), perhaps (adv.) can be used to express a similar meaning to can, may, might, and could.

- It is possible to drive for hours through the Australian Outback without seeing another car or house. (= Drivers can travel for hours ...)

2 Should, likely, unlikely

These words allow you to be cautious, but express a stronger probability that something will or will not happen. Note the grammatical patterns for (un)likely.

a Something is (un)likely to happen (present tense with future meaning)

- People who take no exercise and eat a great deal of ‘junk food’ are likely to become obese. (This is more cautious than will become obese, but less cautious than could become obese.)

Note that should in this context is only used to talk about positive outcomes, so it couldn’t be used in the first example above about obesity.

- The clean-up of the rice fields contaminated by salt during the tsunami should be completed soon.

b Something is (un)likely to have happened (past)

- The very small quantity of oil that escaped from the tanker is unlikely to have harmed local marine life. (This is more cautious than did not harm, but less cautious than may not have harmed.)

TIP Probably (adv.) can be used to express a similar meaning to should, likely, and unlikely.

- Scientists at NASA argue that the asteroid Apophis will probably pass close to the Earth but avoid hitting it. (= Apophis is likely to pass close to ...)

14.4 test yourself

Rewrite the sentences, using the words in brackets and making any other changes necessary.

1 These new studies into brain function help us to understand cases of slow development in some children. (can)
2 High-speed rail travel in Europe will take more market share from short-haul flights. (possible)
3 Scientists have found a way of changing the immune system to prevent food allergies. (may)
4 Medical research will not determine the cause of autism. (unlikely)
5 There is likely to be a worldwide shortage of rare earth metals in the near future. (probably)
6 Sparks from electric power lines caused some of the forest fires in the region. (likely)
7 Space debris will damage key communications satellites. (could)
8 The amount of cybercrime in the USA and Europe will decrease as security software improves. (should)
9 Recent government campaigns did not have any long-lasting impact on levels of adult obesity. (unlikely)
10 The latest fall in unemployment will improve consumer confidence in the economy. (might)
11 A horse that is deprived of sensory stimulation will stop eating. (possibly)
12 Changes in the chemical composition of the material occurred as a result of careless handling in the laboratory. (could)
There are a number of fixed expressions that you can use to hedge a statement. Many of them are prepositional phrases. They include the following:

- on balance
- as a rule/in principle
- to some extent/up to a point
- in some/many respects
- in a/one sense
- for all practical purposes
- more or less

- The great advantage of promoting educational courses on the internet rather than by brochures is that web pages can be updated more or less instantly.
- There are for all practical purposes only two solutions in situations where individuals fear that their mental health is at risk: either they must adapt to the situation, or they must remove themselves from it.
- In many respects football should be regarded as a business rather than a sport, at least as far as the major clubs are concerned.

All of these expressions have become clichés, and while they can be helpful, should not be overused.

There are also three fixed expressions with a hedging effect that are used as connectors to link two clauses in a sentence:

- insofar as/to the extent that
- in the sense that

- The proposed reforms will be useful insofar as/to the extent that they address the needs of the local community. (These two expressions have a slightly more cautious effect than if.)
- The proposal by Wilhelm plc is more cost-effective in the sense that it does not require any additional factories. (This expression has a slightly more cautious effect than because.)

14.5 test yourself
Correct each sentence by adding a preposition.

1 The new antibiotic has principle better long-term prospects.
2 The situation in the region has improved the extent that tourists are now beginning to return.
3 The new CEO Jackie Dell has one sense little left to prove after twenty years of top-flight management.
4 There are balance several advantages to leasing rather than owning a car.
5 The advertising campaign worked the sense that people became aware of the risks of passive smoking.
6 The new law will some extent reduce the opportunities for tax evasion.
Given the nature of their lifestyle, statistics on the number of homeless people are difficult to obtain (can). Despite this, the latest research shows (appear) that in London the number of people who find themselves in this situation is rising. The figure now stands at 4,500 (estimate, approximately). The recession is responsible (likely) to some extent for this increase. Unemployment causes relationships to break down (may), leading to one member of the household being forced to leave. According to Bowcott, economic stress increases levels of alcohol abuse (tendency), which can put at risk an individual’s ability to maintain a job and a tenancy. The situation has been made worse (seem to) by the presence among the newly unemployed of economic migrants, who are not necessarily familiar with UK support systems. Simpson (2010) notes the high proportion of young people (relatively) from the Eastern European accession countries among the homeless population. Apart from their obvious economic problems (possible), such people find it psychologically difficult to return home.

Stem cell research is arguably the most important area of medical research for a generation. Scientists in this field are confident that major breakthroughs can be achieved within the next ten years. Reports on past successes draw attention to improvements in the treatment of leukemia; as for the future, it is accepted that progress in the fight against cancer, multiple sclerosis and Parkinson's disease can be made. On , most people would agree that stem cell research is a medical success story. However, as Miller (2011) points out, it is rare to find a scientific advance that does not, to some extent, cause concern amongst the general public. In this case, it is the use of embryonic stem cells, which are, as a rule, essential to the experiments currently being carried out in some of the key research centres. In some , the two positions taken on this issue can be represented by China, which is relatively permissive of this type of research, and Iran, where an outright ban has been imposed.
C Hedge the phrases in italics in the text about sanctions by rewriting or adding to them, using the words in brackets. Do not change the words in italics.

Economic sanctions against a country are preferable to war (agree). Indeed, a properly calibrated system of sanctions should be implemented in full (argued, normally) before the application of military force is considered. However, the situation on the ground, where sanctions are actually experienced, is more complicated (the evidence, rather).

Holler (2007) maintains that economic sanctions, when they are first applied, unify the people affected (tend) against the institution or country imposing the measures, and thus strengthen the regime in power (help). This was the case (seems as), at least in the early stages, in North Korea, where international sanctions were applied after the Korean War. Holler continues by explaining that sanctions are not effective unless the blame for their effects (only, insofar) can be transferred to the country’s governing class.

D Read the information in brackets and hedge the sentences if necessary.

1 According to Harper and Maxwell (2009), one-third of Londoners believe that the roads in their city are unsafe for cyclists. (This is an estimate.)
2 Support for Scottish home rule will increase, the longer a referendum on independence is delayed. (This is not a certainty.)
3 Laboratory tests have revealed that a package sent to the Foreign Secretary on 13 March last year contained traces of a poisonous substance. (This is a fact.)
4 It is unusual for salts to melt at low temperatures. (Make the first adjective weaker.)
5 The supply of new money, known as quantitative easing, stimulates medium-term growth in the economy. (This generally happens.)
6 New insights into the causes of dementia will emerge from a doubling of government research funding. (There is a very good chance of these insights emerging, but we cannot be certain.)
7 Research has demonstrated that people at risk of type 2 diabetes will reduce the risk of developing the condition by losing weight. (This has been proved.)
8 There is an increase in the level of crime in poorly-maintained city centres. (Make the verb be weaker.)

E Hedge the phrases in italics in the text, using any of the language from unit 14.

Obesity, the medical condition where an excess of body fat causes an adverse effect on health, is now the focus of a great deal of media attention. This interest is explained by research that shows that the incidence of obesity in higher income countries is now rising at its fastest ever rate. Stories in the press, however, are accompanied by photographs designed to shock rather than by statistics designed to educate.

The pictures that draw attention are those of children, and the background narrative concentrates on the diet of junk food that younger people enjoy. If space allows, there is also a reference to a lack of exercise, often with a graphic example, such as the children who are driven to schools that are within easy walking distance of their homes. The overall result of this kind of coverage, however, is a distortion rather than a clarification of the problem.
Introduction

Verbs can combine with 'particles' (adverbs or prepositions) to make two- or three-part phrasal or prepositional verbs. Some have meanings that are easy to understand (e.g. slow down) and others are more difficult to work out (e.g. get on = do well or succeed).

- Production slowed down during the period of restructuring.
- Most interviewees admitted that for them getting on in life meant no more than finding a steady job, buying a flat or house, and eventually starting a family.

Apart from a small group of phrasal verbs that are normally restricted to informal spoken English (e.g. Get off! or Shut up!), most phrasal and prepositional verbs are widely used in academic English, and while some have an exact one-word equivalent (leave out = omit), others do not (to look up a word, for example, means 'to seek the meaning of a word from a source of reference such as a dictionary'). Sometimes a phrasal verb, like an ordinary verb, can have more than one meaning, and may work differently grammatically, depending on the meaning.

Although meaning is the most important aspect of these verbs, it can be helpful to divide them into groups because different types of verbs work in different ways grammatically. For example, call for is a prepositional verb. Call cannot be separated from for. On the other hand, set up is a phrasal verb with an object and up can come before or after the object.

- A small group of politicians is calling for a debate on the subject. (We cannot say calling a debate for on the subject.)
- The CEO of Bardworth plc may set up a new company by the end of the financial year. (We can also say set a new company up.)

Unit contents

1. Phrasal verbs + object page 133
2. Phrasal verbs without an object page 134
3. Prepositional verbs 1 page 135
4. Prepositional verbs 2 page 137
5. Prepositional verbs with two objects page 137
6. Three-part prepositional verbs page 138
7. Passive prepositional verbs page 139

See also unit 13 Verb patterns.
Phrasal verbs that take an object (transitive phrasal verbs) consist of a verb and particle that can stay together before the object or that can separate before and after the object.

- Fragile ecosystems rely on particular species to carry out certain functions, such as the spreading of seeds. (carry out = perform)

But note that they always separate for a pronoun object.

- It became clear that many Americans who had taken out home loans could not pay them back. (not pay back them)

They tend to stay together before long objects.

- When reading in a foreign language, it does not necessarily make sense to look up all the words that are new to you. (not look all the words that are new to you up)

Here are some of the most useful transitive phrasal verbs, grouped by particles.

**+ up**

blow up: explode: blow up a bridge; enlarge: blow up a photograph

bring up: raise: bring up children; bring up an item at a meeting

draw up: prepare in writing, normally through discussion: draw up a contract

fill up: make full: fill up a plane with fuel

firm up: confirm, make more definite: firm up an arrangement, a meeting, the details

give up: stop doing something: give up cigarettes; give up control of a company

hold up: delay: a safety check held up the experiment

keep up: continue: keep up the pressure/pace; keep up payments

look up: search for something in a reference source: look up an event in an encyclopedia

make up: invent: make up an excuse

pick up: collect, find: a train picks up passengers; a microphone picks up a sound

point up: emphasize: point up the cost of a project

set up: establish, make arrangements for: set up a business or a meeting; set up equipment

take up: start: to take up a new post; to take up an idea

weigh up: consider carefully: the company needs to weigh up its options

write up: write formally/write from notes: write up the experiment

Note that:

1. **hold up** can also be used intransitively, see page 135

2. **keep up with** means ‘know about the latest developments’: keep up with research in your field. (See page 138 for more three-part prepositional verbs.)

3. **make up** can also mean ‘to be a part of’: Young people make up a large part of the Turkish population. In this meaning, a pronoun object is never used.

4. **take up** can also mean ‘to fill space or time’: Research takes up most of Professor Bryant’s working year. In this meaning, a pronoun object is never used.

**+ off**

cancel: call off a trip

complete: finish off a report

make redundant: losing the contract meant laying off half the workforce

postpone: put off a meeting

remove: take off clothes

speak angrily to: tell off a child

Note that: take off, with the particle separated, can be used in take a day/week, etc. off work and take the pressure off someone. It also has an intransitive form, see page 135.

**+ on**

organize: put on an exhibition; also put on clothes, a light, the radio, etc.

try on: put on clothes to see if they fit

assume: take on responsibility, take on a task; also employ: take on an assistant

**TIP** The phrasal verb **tell apart** (= distinguish between) always separates for a direct object, whether it is a pronoun or not.

- Both roots and non-roots can contain taproot and hypocotyl tissue, making it difficult to **tell some types** apart.
bail out rescue from financial difficulties: several banks were bailed out by the government
carry out perform: carry out an investigation
check out see if something is reliable: a company should check out potential suppliers
cross out delete wrong text: to cross out a mistake in a report
find out discover: find out what has gone wrong
hand out distribute: hand out printed information at a talk
lay out present something carefully: lay out plans; also lay out tables, etc. in a room
leave out omit accidentally or deliberately: leave out an important detail
point out show: point out a mistake; in her article, Miller points out that...
print out produce a document from a printer; also print off
read out read aloud: read out a paper at a conference
rub out erase a pencil mark: rub out a mistake
sort out resolve: sort out a problem; also arrange: sort out your notes for revision
take out obtain: take out a loan, mortgage, insurance; withdraw: take out money from your account
try out test: try out an idea
wipe out destroy: wipe out a disease
work out calculate: work out this year’s profits

Note that:

1 set out can be used in the same way as lay out, but is preferred for ideas, objections and strategy. Set out also has an intransitive meaning, see page 135.

2 strike out can have a similar meaning to cross out, but tends to be used in legal contexts: strike out a law from the statute book.

3 take out, with the particle separated, can be used in take six months/a year, etc. out, meaning ‘take a break in your studies or career to do something different’.

15.1 test yourself
Complete each sentence with the correct form of the correct verb.

1 I’ll ______________ my talk off by making two recommendations, and then take any questions you may have.
2 After the application closing date, the interviewing team will ______________ up a shortlist of candidates to interview.
3 Employees need to be consulted before they are told to ______________ on significant new responsibilities.
4 The idea for a new business came quickly to the partners, but it took them five years to ______________ the company up.
5 The days when British governments would ______________ out failing car manufacturers have passed.
6 Sometimes the attempt to define the terms of a debate can ______________ up a great deal of time.
7 Employees have the right to contest and ______________ out some of the clauses in their contract.
8 It appears that as soon as a child can talk, it begins to ______________ up stories.
9 Digital TVs sometimes ______________ up signals from the wrong transmitter.
10 A complete tier of middle managers was ______________ off in an attempt to save costs.

15.2 Phrasal verbs without an object

15.2 study
Intransitive phrasal verbs are less common in academic English. Here is a list of those that are sometimes used.
carry on/go on continue: the strike carried on/went on through the winter
bounce back recover: share prices bounced back
die out disappear: jobs for life are dying out; become extinct: the Beach Mouse died out in the 1950s
eat out eat in a restaurant, café, etc.
end up find yourself in an unexpected, often negative, situation: two of the directors ended up in prison
get back move back: the protestors were told to get back; return home: they got back at midnight
go ahead proceed: the project went ahead despite the resignation of its director

134 15 Phrasal and prepositional verbs
go away  leave, disappear gradually: suspicions of malpractice have not gone away

go back/date back: a custom which goes/dates back to the 16th century

go up increase: the retirement age for men will probably go up to 67 (also go down decrease)

hold on keep going in a difficult situation: Boston Chemicals are holding on despite severe losses

hold up remain strong: critics have suggested that Menson's arguments do not hold up

join in participate: bullying can start in a playground activity when one child refuses to join in

move in/out begin to live in a new house/area, etc. or to leave it: richer people have moved out of the area

ring off end a phone conversation: sales staff need to engage potential clients before they ring off

set off start a trip: tourists setting off on their holidays will tolerate minor delays without complaint

slow down to go at a slower speed: the economy slowed down in the first two quarters of this year

speak out say what you think publicly: people in the region are no longer afraid to speak out

take off begin to fly: a plane takes off; become successful: an idea, a product, sales, etc. can take off

turn out to attend an event: ten thousand people turned out for the march through London

Note that:

1 hold on to/onto means 'keep'.
   • The Democrats are unlikely to hold on to their lead in the forthcoming elections.

2 set out can replace set off, but set out can also suggest a much longer or figurative journey.
   • When the company set out in 1928, no one would have thought that it might become a multinational corporation.

3 set out to do something means 'have as a long-term aim'.
   • Sally Bronwen set out to make MaxCo the UK's biggest retailer of garden furniture.

4 stand up can mean 'hold up' but is usually followed by a prepositional phrase.
   • Critics have suggested that Menson's arguments do not stand up under close examination/to close scrutiny.

5 turn out can also be used with an adverb such as well or badly to describe the way in which a situation developed.
   • The shareholder meeting did not turn out well.

(See section 15.6 on page 138 for more three-part prepositional verbs.)
2 apply apply for a job, passport, etc. (but apply to a company for a job); also this deadline applies to all coursework (= concerns).

3 argue argue about something; argue with someone (about something).

4 hear most people have heard about/of the Terracotta Army (= know about); have you heard about the strike (= have you been told); have you heard from your parents (= received news); at this point the jury had not heard from the defendant (= had not got his/her view).

5 think most savers are currently thinking about which options are safest (= consider); they were unable to think of a viable solution (= imagine).

6 work work for a company (= be employed by); they are working on a new design (= are occupied with); also work on your computer skills (= practise).

Here is an alphabetical list of some of the most useful prepositional verbs, from account for to draw on. (See Prepositional verbs 2 on page 137 for engage in to worry about.) Definitions are given where the meaning may not be clear from the main verb.

account for explain: account for the success of a business; record spending: account for printing costs

adapt to increase: an amendment has been added to the Bill

allow for include in planning: allow for delays

approve of agree with: approve of a plan

believe in think that something is valuable: believe in subsidizing the arts; also believe in God

belong to benefit from

care for change into put on other clothes: change into a suit

care for change into put on other clothes: change into a suit

care for change into put on other clothes: change into a suit

care for change into put on other clothes: change into a suit

complain about comply with act according to a rule/law: comply with health and safety legislation

Note that:

1 cope with also means ‘handle’ (see deal with) but is less positive: are you sure you can cope with this?

2 change/transform into can also be a transitive phrasal verb: drought changed/transformed the land into a desert.

15.3 test yourself

Complete each sentence with a preposition.

1 Chemtech is currently working ___________ a series of new antibiotics.

2 Dodsworths plc was fined for not complying ___________ health and safety regulations.

3 None of the candidates could think ___________ an answer to the final exam question.

4 Manucorps plc only deals ___________ wholesalers.

5 A number of staff members have applied ___________ a transfer to another branch.

6 In preparing their budget, the team did not allow ___________ travel expenses.

7 In recent years political parties have wanted greater numbers of young people to benefit ___________ higher education.

8 The union has agreed ___________ an external arbitration process.
15.4 study
engage in take part in: engage in research
enquire about
escape from
focus on
get through make phone contact: to get through to the right person; reach: aid does not always get through;
survive: get through the recession; be officially approved: the law may not get through
go into start a career: go into business, teaching etc.;
examine: go into the details
go through experience, often negative: the company has gone through some hard times; check the details: go through a contract; do a number of actions: go through the interview process
happen to
insist on
keep to respect: keep to an agreement/a schedule; be relevant: keep to the point/subject
laugh at
lead to result in/cause: recessions lead to unemployment
liaise with communicate with in an official capacity: protest march leaders are liaising with the police
live for see something as important in your life: live for your work
look at
look into investigate: look into a complaint
make for move towards: the soldiers were making for base when the attack occurred
object to
occur to come to mind: it occurred to the team that their calculations might be wrong
point to indicate: the evidence points to a link between stress at work and illness
protest against
qualify for pass the entrance test: she has qualified for the Olympics
recover from
refer to
respond to take action as a result: customers responded to the price increase by cutting back on orders
result in
run into experience: run into difficulties, opposition, etc.; cost a great deal: the final bill will run into billions of dollars
smile at
specialize in

Note that:
go through with means ‘complete something difficult’.
• Going through with the merger will mean making a third of the staff redundant.

(See section 15.6 on page 138 for more three-part prepositional verbs.)

15.4 test yourself
Complete each sentence with the correct form of the correct verb.

1 Metterlune ___________ into the controversy around the Beckendale copyright case, and concluded that most of the evidence ___________ to difficulties arising from the interpretation of the term ‘original creation’.
2 When first interviewed by police, victims of crime may still be ___________ from shock.
3 Trauma victims may ___________ through a long period where they attempt to suppress memories of the original incidents that ___________ to their present condition.
4 Some companies within the financial sector have been accused of ___________ in very poor practices.
5 In order to ___________ for funding, postgraduate students must already have registered for a PhD programme.

15.5 Prepositional verbs with two objects

15.5 study
The following is a small selection of verbs that can take a direct object as well as a prepositional object.

accuse/suspect someone of something
blame someone for something
borrow something from someone
compare something/someone with something/someone

stare at
succeed in
suffer from have an illness or problem: businesses may suffer from a lack of investment
vote for
worry about

1 Metterlune ___________ into the controversy around the Beckendale copyright case, and concluded that most of the evidence ___________ to difficulties arising from the interpretation of the term ‘original creation’.
2 When first interviewed by police, victims of crime may still be ___________ from shock.
3 Trauma victims may ___________ through a long period where they attempt to suppress memories of the original incidents that ___________ to their present condition.
4 Some companies within the financial sector have been accused of ___________ in very poor practices.
5 In order to ___________ for funding, postgraduate students must already have registered for a PhD programme.
congratulate someone on something
download something from the internet/a website
(also upload something to ...)
explain something to someone
fill something with something
invest some money/time in something
lend something to someone
obtain something from someone
prevent/stop someone/something from something
protect someone/something from someone/something
provide someone with something
remind someone of something

cut back/down on reduce: nutritionists advise the public to cut back/down on red meat
face up to deal with a difficult situation: face up to a problem, crisis, etc.; face up to responsibilities
get down to give attention to: get down to work, business
get out of leave, escape from: get out of a car; get out of the city; get out of an agreement
go along with agree, often reluctantly: they have no choice but to go along with the recommendations
live up to be as good as expected: the company failed to live up to its reputation for quality
run out of finish the supply: run out of food, money, time, patience, etc.
watch out for be aware of: consumers need to watch out for the small print in contracts

commence complete each sentence with the correct form of a verb and a preposition.
1 Balance of trade figures are formed by _______ the value of imports ___________ the value of exports.
2 The City Leisure Group has _______ £10m _______ updating five restaurants in the borough of Westminster.
3 Poor hygiene practices in the canteen kitchen have been _______ sixteen cases of food poisoning at the factory.
4 There is a growing market for TV documentaries that ___________ complex scientific theory _______ the general public.
5 _______ fire is a priority that is sometimes overlooked in budgets.

Three-part prepositional verbs

A few three-part prepositional verbs (verb + adverb + preposition) are sometimes used in academic English. They always take an object, and the ones given below cannot be separated.

catch up with reach a higher standard/level: catch up with competitors
catch up with/on to bring yourself up to date: catch up on your reading
come up against encounter difficulties: come up against opposition
come up with think of an idea: come up with an answer, solution, explanation, etc.
Passive prepositional verbs

A number of prepositional verbs are often used in the passive form (be + past participle + preposition). Note that the regular meaning of the verb does not change through its preposition.

• An advertisement can sometimes be aimed at a very small market in a cost effective way by being placed in, for example, a specialist magazine.

Here is a list of some of the most useful of these prepositional verbs, with explanations provided where the meaning may not be clear.

be aimed at
be associated with  be connected to: violence is sometimes associated with alcohol abuse
be based on
be considered as/be regarded as/be seen as
be defined as
be derived from come/originate from: some medicines are derived from plants
be divided into
be involved in
be known as
be prejudiced against have an irrational dislike of: some people are prejudiced against gay men and women
be required for
be used in

15.7 test yourself

Complete each sentence with the passive form of one of the verbs in the box and a preposition.

base prejudice regard associate require

1 A painting can _________________ subversive if it is seen to undermine moral values of the state.
2 Judges have to decide whether juries may _________________ defendants as a result of media coverage of a case.
3 A focus group, rather than a questionnaire or street interview, may _________________ some types of market research.
4 The shortlisting process _________________ an assessment of how well the candidates meet the criteria in the job specification.
5 Vitamin D deficiency _________________ various types of obesity.
A Complete the text about science programmes on television with the correct adverbs or prepositions.

TV programmes in which experts explain science first date to the early years of television. According to Hopkins (2007), such programmes can be divided into two types. The first of these is the illustrated lecture, where an eminent scientist essentially reads a simplified paper, and, depending on the occasion, members of the audience may join the event by taking part, for example, in a simple experiment. The second, more recent type, may be aimed at a younger audience, and normally involves computer-generated images, voiceovers, and dramatic music.

Critics sometimes complain that these programmes often leave some of the complexities of the scientific method in their attempt to put a good show. Hopkins, however, insists on their usefulness, pointing the way in which they can contribute to the popular understanding of difficult subjects, and allow viewers to catch up with recent scientific discoveries.

B Complete the media studies text using the correct form of the words in the box.

Critics have argued the merits of Sergei Eisenstein’s *Battleship Potemkin* since its release in 1925, but there can be little doubt that it is now regarded as one of cinema’s most influential films. On his own military experience, Eisenstein out to make a propaganda piece that would persuade the audience of the justice of the sailors’ rebellion against their Tsarist officers. Though based on real events, the film-maker made some of the sequences, including the famous ‘Odessa Steps’ episode.

British censors, to the film’s revolutionary message, banned the film until 1954, but, as Grice (2005) observes, contemporary critics acclaimed Eisenstein’s innovative editing technique, which is as ‘montage’.

C Complete the text about political strategy, using the correct form of the verbs in the box.

Political analysts at the time for the success of Barack Obama’s presidential bid in 2008 by reference to the phenomenon of the ‘Obama Republican’. What they meant was that a certain type of voter who had previously been as a Republican, was into a Democrat purely by the appeal of Obama’s message. Obama Republicans, as Brandter (2011) out, were typically white working-class Americans who felt that mainstream Republican opinion had left them behind.

According to Fields (2010), a similar process Tony Blair with electoral success in the UK in the previous decade, as traditional Conservative supporters began to for his brand of middle-of-the-road politics.
Correct one of the words in each phrasal or prepositional verb in italics in the discussion about the ‘big society’.

Annabel: In my view, one of the reasons why the idea of the ‘big society’ hasn’t 'taken up' is that people don’t really understand what it means. So can anyone here define it?

Benedict: It was ‘based’ initially on the idea of giving power to local communities, wasn’t it?

Annabel: Yes, and most people would ‘come along with’ that, I guess, but what does it mean in policy terms?

Chihiro: Well, the Conservative manifesto ‘sets up’ five key points. Point four, which is quite specific, talks about supporting co-ops, charities and social enterprises.

Benedict: That’s why the Big Society Bank was ‘made up’ in 2011, isn’t it?

Annabel: And the idea was that the bank would ‘hand up’ money to local groups?

Chihiro: Yes, but the launch has already been ‘switched off’ several times.

Annabel: This is one of the reasons why people are ‘prejudiced with’ the whole concept of the big society, isn’t it?

Benedict: That’s right. It seems to be a powerful idea, but it ‘stops up’ being difficult to implement.

Chihiro: And the critics also argue that it’s just a way for the government to ‘go back on’ public expenditure.

---

E Complete the introduction to a talk on the Chinese Terracotta Army, using the correct form of the verbs in the box. You will need to add an adverb or preposition to three of the verbs.

The Terracotta Army, which 1 ________ at least 8,000 soldiers, dates back to the third century BCE. Excavation of the site in Xi’an has been 2 ________ out for more than thirty years, but most experts 3 ________ with the view that it is far from complete.

In this talk, I would like to 4 ________ the construction of the figures themselves. It appears that the material used to make the soldiers 5 ________ from Mount Li in the north-west of Xi’an. The researcher Duan Qingbo suggests that eight basic moulds were 6 ________ in the creation of the faces. Apparently, the craftsmen who were employed to model the figures then 7 ________ clay to the surface to provide individual facial features. This explains how one soldier can 8 ________ another in appearance.

Duan Qingbo indicates that groups of craftsmen 9 ________ in preparing the different parts of the body, and that the pieces were brought together in a kind of assembly line. The final figures were painted in bright colours, and 10 ________ from decay by a lacquer finish. Although the colours have greatly faded, patches of blue, pink, brown, red, and green are still visible.

F Write 150–250 words about the steps that need to be taken before setting up a new restaurant in a town centre. You may want to discuss market research, appointing a head chef, and the creation of a menu. Try to use at least ten phrasal or prepositional verbs.
Introduction

The first text might have appeared in a book or journal. The second is a paraphrase of it that could be used in an essay. Find the phrases in the second text that paraphrase the underlined words or phrases in the first text. Then find four words or phrases that are in both texts, and say why this repetition is acceptable.

Humans have many ways of genetically manipulating the life around us in order to suit our needs. For millennia we have engaged in selective breeding of plants and animals useful to us; in fact, this is a large part of what traditional farming is about. In the twentieth century we developed ways of speeding up the process, such as mutagenesis by chemical agents or radiation. Within the past generation, genetic engineering, or genetic modification, has begun to develop into a fully-fledged technology. (Davis, 2009: 93).

As Davis (2009) explains, there are many techniques for creating a living organism with the characteristics we want to see, and to ensure these changes are passed on to its offspring. The most basic of these is selective breeding, which for thousands of years was the way in which agriculture developed. In the last century scientists created more efficient techniques, as Davis demonstrates, using chemicals and radiation to trigger long-lasting change in the genetic structure. The latest form of these manipulations of life is genetic modification, also known as genetic engineering.

A paraphrase is an alternative to a direct quote. In rewriting an author’s idea in your own words, you avoid plagiarism and show that you understand the original text. Paraphrases are normally of similar length to the original text, and always acknowledge the source. Although the style of writing should be your own, most paraphrases feature a combination of some of the following techniques.

1 A reference to the author with a reporting verb such as indicate or claim.
   - Stafford concludes that a golfer’s familiarity with a course is not always a psychological advantage.

2 The use of synonyms such as a business instead of a company or depend on to replace rely on.

3 A change in word form (i.e. part of speech, such as verb to noun).
   - The rate of crime rises (verb) in inverse proportion to the standard of living.
   → A rise (noun) in the level of crime follows a fall in living standards (Bridges, 2007).

4 A change in the structure of sentences.
   - In most extended droughts, farm animals begin to die of dehydration.
   → Dehydration causes the death of farm animals as droughts worsen, as Miller points out.

This unit covers these techniques one by one; looks at some of the words and phrases you should repeat; and then shows the techniques working together. (Note that no one technique on its own will produce a paraphrase.)

Suggested answers: see page 208
16.1 Reporting verbs

A common way of referring to the original author in your paraphrase is to use his or her name with a reporting verb and sometimes with the word as.

1. **Believe, consider, say, suggest, think**

   The verbs in this first group all mean that the paraphrased writer is making a case.
   - First contact with a company in the service sector, as Willows has suggested, is crucial in terms of the image that the consumer will build. (or Willows suggests that first contact ...)

2. **Argue, assert, claim, conclude, confirm, contend, insist, maintain, state, warn**

   The verbs in this second group have the same meaning but are a little more emphatic.
   - Selig maintains that within all group situations, leaders identify themselves first of all through body language.

3. **Demonstrate, explain, indicate, note, prove, reveal, show**

   The verbs in this third group are all connected with the idea of showing.
   - Hartner explains, we have to take into account in polling that the more personally-focused the questions are, the greater the likelihood that the respondent may not be telling the truth.

   Note that demonstrate, indicate, prove, reveal, and show are often associated with statistical or other firm evidence.
   - Figures released by the government in March show that unemployment is at its highest level for seven years.

4. **Accept, agree, deny, doubt**

   In this fourth group, the paraphrased writer is normally commenting on someone else's work or opinions.
   - Howard, in her work on Shakespeare, doubts that the wide range of learning on display is an appropriate basis on which to question his authorship of the histories or tragedies.

5. **Blame, condemn, criticize**

   In this fifth group the paraphrased author takes a negative or critical position.
   - Davidoff, in his article on Thatcher, condemns commentators for basing their analysis of some of her key decisions on her background as the daughter of a shopkeeper.

   Tip: The normal pattern for the verbs in this fifth group is to blame/condemn/criticize someone or something for (doing) something.

6. **Characterize, classify, define, evaluate, identify, portray, present**

   In this final group, the verbs are all connected with the idea of describing.
   - In his essays, Lawrence often seems to portray post-industrial society as a kind of destructive machine.

   Tip: The normal pattern for the verbs in this sixth group is to characterize/classify, etc. someone or something as (doing) something.

---

16.1 test yourself

Circle the correct option.

1. Milthorp doubts/criticizes the police for the length of time that protestors were contained in one place.

2. Markham has concluded/identified the poor performance of some schools as a key factor in youth unemployment.

3. The authors of the report demonstrate/evaluate that health and safety standards have risen on North Sea oil rigs.

4. As Rumisek states/classifies in the introduction to her book, the design of a hospital can have a positive effect on the health of its patients.

5. Barlow characterizes/contends Liverpool as a city where small regeneration projects have produced impressive returns on their initial costs.

6. Heller and Golding have believed/argued that the concept of the garden city as conceived by Sir Ebenezer Howard in the 19th century needs to be revisited.
16.2 Words or phrases that you don’t change

16.2 study

There are two types of word or phrase that you should repeat in your paraphrase, even if synonyms exist, because you don’t need to demonstrate that you know what they mean and using them won’t leave you open to charges of plagiarism. Normally these words are single nouns, or nouns in pairs.

1 Conventional words or phrases (language that we all use for specific things) such as passport, pension, house; annual holiday, residential area, processed foods.

• The accepted tradition whereby junior doctors in hospitals may spend up to twelve hours a day on duty during a working week needs to be reconsidered as a matter of urgency.
  → According to Steele, we should question as a matter of priority the established practice of young physicians junior doctors working eighty-hour weeks in medical facilities hospitals.

2 Specialized words or phrases within a particular subject area such as barrister, plea bargain (law); asset, business plan (business studies); director, proscenium arch (theatre studies).

• Small and medium enterprises can fail because they simply lack cash when it matters.
  → Carling warns that a shortage of available money cash at a critical time can undermine successful medium-sized companies small and medium enterprises.

Note that in some cases, whether or not you can repeat a word will be a matter of personal judgment.

16.2 test yourself

Circle the words or phrases that you do not need to paraphrase.

1 High-speed trains are a prerequisite for a thriving modern economy.
2 The Asian tiger is under threat as a trophy for hunters on safari; as a source of parts for traditional medicine; and for its skin.
3 The share price dropped to an all-time low in January but bounced back at the end of the financial year.

4 Reaching agreement over copyright issues is the single most pressing issue that the music industry faces.
5 If they accomplish nothing else, water meters remind the consumer that this precious liquid is, ultimately, a limited resource.
6 Acting as a school governor allows a member of the public to put their specific expertise at the service of their local school.

16.3 Synonyms

16.3 study

An ordinary dictionary, a thesaurus, or a specialized dictionary of synonyms (sometimes with their opposites, antonyms) will provide you with synonyms, but you need to ensure that the synonym you choose represents the meaning of the original word in its particular context.

• Original text: Incorrect versions of meetings were supplied to the committee on several occasions.
  → Paraphrase: Grierson argues that the committee was given fake false accounts of meetings a number of times. (Fake might suggest that the meetings themselves were invented, or that true reports exist elsewhere.)

In this section, some examples of good synonyms are listed in brackets, with enough context to show you the meaning. Remember, however, that a single synonym in a sentence is only one element of a paraphrase; it will need to be combined with some of the other changes described in this unit. Note also that there are times, particularly when a writer uses an idiomatic expression, that you may need to provide a synonymous phrase to avoid repeating the idiom.

• These days, very few investors keep all their eggs in one basket.
  → As Burnstone concludes, investors nowadays rarely place all their assets in a single financial institution.

TIP Thesauruses are available in book form or online. All of them will offer you synonyms, but the important thing, once you have chosen one or two synonyms, is to check their meaning in context either in the thesaurus itself, if it provides that facility, or in a good English-English dictionary.
1 Noun synonyms

The wealth (affluence) of the area was highlighted by the number of gated communities.

Rachel Stevens won the prize (award) seven times.

The theatre company had to look for a new sponsor (backer).

Laws exist to prevent a state of anarchy (chaos).

Fortunately, no harm (damage) was done to the nuclear reactor.

The chair of the enquiry asked for a full account (explanation) of the events.

A fine (financial penalty) was imposed on all three companies found guilty of polluting the river.

A degree of tolerance (open-mindedness) is required when people live in close proximity to each other.

There was an immediate backlash (negative reaction) against the law.

2 Verb synonyms

Mixing (combining) business with corporate entertainment can lead to poor decision-making.

A loss of confidence in corporate governance can reduce (decrease) a company's share value quite quickly.

Such problems will only go away (disappear) if they are tackled at source.

You can often find out (discover) the style of a holiday through knowing the destination.

There was a great deal of pressure to expand (enlarge) the scope of the enquiry.

The kingdom is ruled (governed) by the prince and a small council of elders.

This was an interesting attempt to explore (investigate) the effects of long-term isolation.

At this point the family controlled (managed) seven separate businesses.

A great deal can be learned simply by watching (observing) senior managers at work.

3 Adjective synonyms

But the juvenile (childish) behaviour of some disc jockeys does not help their case.

The severity of the cuts is likely to have a negative (harmful) effect on the economy.

At most they can be accused of a naive (innocent) trust in the good faith of their partners.

Fruitful (productive) talks do not always lead to sweeping (extensive) changes.

The company has shown a genuine (real) interest in charitable (non-profit-making) activities.

But this form of cursory (superficial) investigation is unlikely to lead to a fair (just) outcome.

4 Adverb synonyms

At that point there was practically (almost) nothing left in the budget.

Some of the prisoners at the camp were treated harshly (cruelly).

The proposed designs for the factory were wholeheartedly (enthusiastically) welcomed by the board.

It is an extraordinarily (extremely) difficult festival to organize.

The difficulties lie chiefly (principally) in the design.

The events surrounding the preparation of the contract were not handled properly (professionally).

Short-term goals that are recklessly (rashly) pursued are not likely to have successful outcomes.
Replace the underlined words with a synonym. You may need to use a dictionary. There is usually more than one possible answer.

1. The designers assured the board of directors that the heating ducts on the roof of the building would not be noticeable ____________ from the ground.

2. A company may sometimes need to print ____________ brochures for some of their clients, rather than simply referring them to a website.

3. The speech from an honoured guest can be the highlight ____________ of a graduation ceremony.

4. Even the most astute investors were momentarily ____________ blinded by the light of the dotcom boom.

5. The strain ____________ produced by long-term debt may lead to forms of drug abuse, both legal and illegal.

6. Pacific salmon consistently ____________ die within a few days of spawning.

7. Not all employees respond well to being complimented ____________.

8. The announcement of the acquisition produced an unenthusiastic ____________ response from shareholders.

For a useful source of word families, see the Academic Word List (AWL) developed by Dr Averil Coxhead at Victoria University of Wellington in New Zealand. (http://www.victoria.ac.nz/lals/resources/academicwordlist/)

This section provides some examples of word form transformations in sentence contexts.

1. **Verb ↔ noun**
   - Companies need to **distribute** their products in the most cost-effective way.
   - → The cost-effective **distribution** of their products is vital to companies.
   - **Competition** for quality jobs at postgraduate level is fierce at the moment.
   - → Postgraduate students have to **compete** hard at the moment for quality jobs.

2. **Adjective ↔ adverb**
   - Varying the height of the roofs in the complex was a **creative** response to the problem.
   - → The architects responded **creatively** to the problem by varying the height of the roofs.
   - The performance of the choir was surprisingly moving.
   - → The performance of the choir moved the audience in a **surprising** way.

3. **Verb ↔ adjective**
   - Consultants advised the company to **extend** the range of their products.
   - → Consultants advised the company to make the range of their products more **extensive**.
   - Whatever the virtues of its design, a restaurant has to be **functional**.
   - → A restaurant must **function** well, whatever the virtues of its design.

4. **Adjective ↔ noun**
   - A football stadium should be easily **accessible** by coach and foot, if not also by train and bus.
   - → People should be able to gain easy **access** to a football stadium by coach and foot, if not also by train and bus.
   - **Familiarity** with the policies of a prospective employer can be useful at an interview.
   - → It can be useful at an interview to be **familiar** with the policies of a prospective employer.

---

16.4 **Changes in word forms**

**16.4 study**

Many commonly-used academic words have several grammatical forms. Together these forms are called a 'word family'.

`analyse` (verb) → `analysis` (noun) or `analyst` (noun) → `analytical` (adjective) → `analytically` (adverb)

Changing the form of a word in a source text is useful in a paraphrase because it will necessitate a change in the grammar of your sentence, which in turn will help you in the process of creating a new sentence.

- A **requirement** for a comprehensive evaluation of the consequences of long-term unemployment would be a substantial quantity of data.
  → Peters explains that a thorough study of the effects of long-term unemployment would **require** a great deal of data.


16.4 test yourself
Rewrite each sentence, using the word in brackets.
1 There is no direct link between how well a CEO is remunerated and the success of a company. (remuneration)
2 The mineral wealth of the Ural mountains has had a fundamental effect on the region's history. (fundamentally)
3 South Korea has the economic ability to buy its way out of any regional recession. (able)
4 It is beneficial for students to have undergraduates and postgraduates studying some of the same courses. (benefit – verb)
5 Markets can self-adjust to bring inflation under control. (self-adjustment)
6 Self-publishing ventures often owe their success to the power of the internet. (successful)
7 The ultimate effect of the rise of national pride in post-colonial countries is positive. (ultimately)
8 A thorough investigation of the different ways to collect payment is essential for the sole trader. (investigate)

16.5 Changes in structure

16.5 study
Changing the grammatical structure of a sentence can help you to make a paraphrase. In this section six areas where change is quite often possible are listed. For more information on these grammatical areas, page references are given. Note that these are not the only structural changes to be used; you will have to use your grammatical knowledge to make other transformations when you see the source text.

1 Cause and effect (see page 108 for more information)

cause ↔ effect
- The spread of GM trials had led to a series of protests. → A series of protests has resulted from the spread of GM trials.

because ↔ as a result ↔ so ... that
- Medical services are coming under pressure as a result of people living longer. → Medical services are coming under pressure because people are living longer. → People are living so much longer that medical services are coming under pressure.

2 Comparison (see page 016 for more information)

than ↔ as ... as
- Sometimes paying a fine will be cheaper than going to court. → Sometimes paying a fine will not be as expensive as going to court.

3 Expressing contrast (see page 064 for more information)

although ↔ despite ↔ however
- Although Dian Fossey spent years studying gorillas, their behaviour would still surprise her. → Despite years spent studying gorillas, their behaviour would still surprise Dian Fossey. → Dian Fossey spent years studying gorillas; however, their behaviour would still surprise her.

4 Passives (see page 082 for more information)

active ↔ passive
- Carol Hardman designed the pioneering software. → The pioneering software was designed by Carol Hardman.

5 Participles (see page 067 for more information)

before, after, since + noun + verb → before, after, since + -ing form
- After Tom Azezi left the team, his inventions were all on a much smaller scale. → After leaving the team, Tom Azezi's inventions were all on a much smaller scale.

6 Modal verbs (see page 100 for more information)

can, could ↔ be able to
- In later years, Foubert plc could not match its earlier success. → In later years, Foubert plc was unable to match its earlier success.

may, might, could ↔ be possible
- A medical breakthrough in the field of cancer research could happen in the next ten years. → It is possible that a medical breakthrough in the field of cancer research will happen in the next ten years.

should ↔ be likely to
- We should see a reduction in the price of hybrid cars within five years. → We are likely to see a reduction in the price of hybrid cars within five years.
16.5 test yourself

Rewrite each sentence, following the instructions in brackets.

1 Psychologists have yet to study the effects of the very long-term use of computer games. (use a passive form)
2 Politicians tend to be more optimistic than economists. (use as...as)
3 Subsidized house insulation schemes should become more popular as energy prices rise. (use likely)
4 Despite their many advantages, lithium-ion batteries have some drawbacks. (use although)
5 Before she wrote her first novel, Agatha Christie worked as a First World War nurse. (use a participle)
6 Long-term exposure to radiation can cause cancer. (use result from)
7 Data loss may occur while the virus is being eliminated. (use possible)
8 More than 2,000 cattle died in Kansas in July 2010 because temperatures rose extremely high. (use so...that)

16.6 Techniques working together

16.6 study

So far, to make things clear, the various techniques for creating a paraphrase have been examined separately. In this section and the ‘Challenge yourself’ exercises, you will see the techniques working together to create longer paraphrases, as in the example texts on genetic modification that opened the unit.

Note that in these longer paraphrases you can sometimes change the number and length of sentences (i.e. the techniques can work across sentence boundaries); for example, in the paraphrase of the text below, the first and second pairs of sentences are combined into one sentence each.

Note also that you will need to remind the reader later in your text that you are still paraphrasing, either by referring to the author once more by name (see below), or by using the Latin abbreviation (ibid.), which means ‘from the same source’ (see the paraphrase in 16.6 test yourself).

Source text

The channels through which companies market their products have changed over the years. A hundred years ago commercial information could only be conveyed by ‘small ads’ in newspapers and large painted signs on the sides of buildings. Over the intervening years, the number of available media increased to include magazines, billboards, and television. Direct mail was another new approach. Although the advertisers did their best to target their spend, it was accepted that theirs was a broad-brush approach, with very little evidence that they were succeeding in the appropriate markets. (Hill, 2010: 33)

Paraphrase with notes

Hill (2010) points out that marketing methods are not the same as they were a century ago, when ‘small ads’ in newspapers and signs painted on walls were the only way of transmitting the message. The twentieth century saw the rise of new ways to reach the consumer, from the billboard and the magazine, to television, and direct mail. Despite their efforts to advertise directly to the desired target, advertisers were still aware, as Hill explains, that they were investing their money in a very wide audience, only some of whom were presumably interested.

Paraphrase without notes

Hill (2010) points out that marketing methods are not the same as they were a century ago, when ‘small ads’ in newspapers and signs painted on walls were the only way of transmitting the message. The twentieth century saw the rise of new ways to reach the consumer, from the billboard and the magazine, to television, and direct mail. Despite their efforts to advertise directly to the desired target, advertisers were still aware, as Hill explains, that they were investing their money in a very wide audience, only some of whom were presumably interested.
Environmental sustainability in building design plays a significant role these days in the professional life of an architect. It is essential, if this demand is to be satisfied, that the plans begin by considering the manner in which the building materials were produced. The building's impact on the green or man-made environment that surrounds it also needs to be evaluated by the architect at this stage (Benn, 2007: 167).

Paraphrase

According to Benn (2007), designing a building so that it is environmentally sustainable is now an important element in an architect’s daily work. To meet this requirement, the plans must start by taking into account how the building materials were made. At the same time, the architect has to assess the effect of the structure on the surrounding natural or built environment (ibid.).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source text</th>
<th>Paraphrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 Environmental sustainability</td>
<td>so that it is environmentally sustainable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Building design</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 plays a significant role these days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 It is essential ... that the plans</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 if this demand is to be satisfied</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 by considering the manner in which</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 The building's impact</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 green or man-made</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 needs to be evaluated by the architect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Challenge yourself

A Write paraphrases of the sentences.

1. For a minor per capita cost, political parties could be publicly-funded, thus avoiding charges that government policy can be influenced by large private donations (Smith, 2010: 75).

2. In attempting to attract the peak-time audience, the BBC depends too heavily on costume drama (Sutcliffe, 2011: 45).

3. Arts funding in the UK, whether by the state or by private philanthropists, is undoubtedly London-centric, with the result that the requirements of the regions are rarely met (Alberge, 2010: 16).

4. A system whereby parents put themselves in serious debt so as to purchase a house near a highly-ranked primary school is clearly absurd (Gardner, 2011: 26).

5. The British painter Keith Vaughan has been overlooked by critics as a result of his depiction of the human form, during a period when his peers favoured the abstract in their art (Hamilton, 2009: 12).

6. The failure of a business start-up is more often due to a lack of good guidance than a shortfall in its financing (Prosser, 2011: 67).

B Write paraphrases of the source texts.

1. The authorship of Shakespeare’s plays

   Doubts continue to surround Shakespeare’s authorship of the plays currently attributed to him. No strong evidence, however, has been produced to defend any other candidate, and the concerns expressed appear to be based on nothing more substantial than a belief that the writer’s humble origins seem incompatible with his poetic brilliance. Furthermore, all the extant documentary evidence, in terms of official records and the testimony of contemporaries, points to Shakespeare as author as firmly as any other accepted attributions of the period are made (Asher, 2006: 134).

2. Criticisms of farmed salmon

   Salmon farming is not a particularly successful means of increasing the amount of fresh fish available to the modern consumer. To begin with, one must be aware that the salmon is a carnivorous fish with a heavy nutritional requirement. This means in reality that a farmed salmon does not produce as much fish as it eats. Vegetable proteins may prove to be an alternative, but as currently used, they reduce the amount of valuable omega-3 fatty acids in the product. Secondly, the use of open-net cages in the farming process allows disease and sea lice to spread from farmed salmon to local or transient stocks of wild salmon (Nye, 2006: 56).
3 The drawbacks of ‘kettling’

‘Kettling’, the process through which protestors are contained by the police within a limited space for a number of hours, has three drawbacks. Firstly, it often leads to the detention of innocent bystanders who might have nothing to do with the demonstration. Secondly, it denies detainees access to food, water, and toilets. Thirdly, the atmosphere brought about within the ‘kettle’ might actually exacerbate the potential for disorder (May, 2010: 190).

4 The garden city experiment

The success of the garden city enterprise has not been properly gauged because the concept has never been realized as it was originally intended. The initiator of the garden city movement, Sir Ebenezer Howard, foresaw towns designed within quite specific parameters: the number of inhabitants limited to 32,000, for example, and sites spanning 6,000 acres. Despite this, his reliance on the investors in the company First Garden City Ltd meant that he was unable to hire the costly architects who would respect his designs (Patel, 2008: 276).

5 Problems with gated communities

Supporters of gated communities put forward arguments in their defense that do not bear much critical scrutiny. They maintain that by excluding strangers, the opportunity for criminal activity can be diminished. What they do not realize is that most of the strangers they mention have no criminal intentions, and that the presence of a number of passers-by might actually deter criminal activity. In fact, statistics indicate that in the United States there is no less crime among gated communities than there is in their non-gated neighbours (Martoff, 2007: 67).

6 The influence of Margaret Thatcher’s childhood

All of the impulses that led to Margaret Thatcher’s policy making of the 1980s can be traced back to her childhood in Lincolnshire. Her economic desire to balance the nation’s budget is that of a grocer’s daughter. Her sense of an individual taking responsibility for his or her own fate, rather than relying on the government, stems from her family’s Methodist beliefs. Similarly, her commitment to civic duty derives from her father’s example as an alderman and later mayor of Grantham (Weaver, 2009: 46).

C Select a short text in your own area of study or area of interest and write your own paraphrase.
Conditional sentences are a useful way of exploring the relationship between cause and effect, in all types of text, from factual writing to the development of arguments.

- If you heat water to a high enough temperature, it boils.
- If diamonds had not been discovered in South Africa, the history of that region would have followed a less dramatic and probably more peaceful path.

Conditional sentences always contain two parts: the if clause, which expresses the condition, and a clause expressing the result. The if clause can come first or second. When it comes first, you should put a comma after it.

- If you invest in research and development, you will always get a good return on your money.
- You will always get a good return on your money if you invest in research and development.

This unit looks at the two types of conditional sentence: ‘real’ (zero and first conditionals) as in the sentence above about boiling water, and ‘unreal’ or ‘hypothetical’ (second and third conditionals) as in the sentence about South Africa.

**Unit contents**

1. Zero conditionals page 153
2. First conditionals page 153
3. Provided (that), unless, etc. page 154
4. Second conditionals page 155
5. Third conditionals page 156

See also unit 12 Talking about cause and effect for more examples of conditional sentences.
**17.1 Zero conditionals**

**17.1 study**

Zero conditionals are ‘real’ conditionals, which means that they describe things that are true or are likely to happen. They normally have present tense verbs in both parts of the sentence and describe situations that always produce the same results. *When* or *whenever* (meaning ‘every time that’) can often replace *if*.

- *If/When/Whenever I read all day, I get a headache.*

They are common in a number of subject areas including science, business and law.

- *If/When/Whenever a small asteroid hits the Earth’s atmosphere, it burns up immediately.*
- *We are not able to offer refunds if/when goods are returned without receipts.*
- *Completing an annual tax return is a legal requirement if/when you are self-employed.*

*Tip* It’s possible to use two past tenses together.

- *If/When scientists in those early days made discoveries that might offend religious authority, they sometimes wrote up their results in code. Some of these codes have been broken recently by computer programs.*

In a presentation, speakers occasionally use the form *What happens if...?*

- *... and what happens if we apply this trend to the next decade? Well, you can immediately see from my next slide that...*  

**17.1 test yourself**

Make complete sentences by adding *if*. Add commas and capital letters where necessary.

1. local authorities are fined they do not recycle at least 25% of domestic rubbish.
2. you translate poetry into another language you lose some aspects of the original text.
3. phosphorus burns you expose it to air.
4. some travel companies guarantee to deliver your tickets within twenty-four hours you pay online.
5. they overtrain athletes increase the risk of injury in competition.
6. transport costs are reduced most produce sold is grown locally.

**17.2 First conditionals**

**17.2 study**

**1 Form and use**

Like zero conditionals, first conditionals are ‘real’ conditionals. They typically use the present simple tense in the *if* clause, and the future with *will* in the result clause.

- *If temperatures rise again, there will be further outbreaks of fire in the forests of southern Greece.*

*Tip* Remember that we don’t use *will* in the *if* clause of first conditionals.

- *If it will cut costs now, Motoatron will survive the recession.*

First conditionals are often used for asking about or making predictions. Such predictions can be a way of giving a warning or of offering advice.

- *Many small companies will lose business if they do not take advantage of internet marketing.*
- *If you submit your essay after the deadline, it will not be marked.*
- *Who will be the winners in society if interest rates rise dramatically?*

They may also be used for offers and guarantees.

- *There is no fine print. If you are not completely satisfied with any item or service you buy from us, we will refund your money in full for up to one year after purchase.*

*Tip* *Be going to* can be used in either part of a first conditional sentence, particularly in spoken English. In this example, a student is giving a presentation.

- *No one is saying that there aren’t conventional answers to social issues. But if we’re going to find solutions to some of these urban problems, then we’ll have to be willing to experiment.*
2 Verb variations

In the result clause, you can use a modal verb instead of will. May, might, and could, for example, express a less certain outcome.
- We may see some improvement in the automatic translation of web pages if there is a greater investment in academic research in the area.

Should can be used to mean ‘it’s the right thing to do’ or, if the outcome is positive, ‘will probably’.
- If tourists visit sacred sites, they should ensure that they are familiar with the appropriate code of dress.
- A further outbreak of fighting should be avoided if both sides come to the negotiating table.

Be likely/unlikely to + verb also expresses less certain results than will/will not.
- Experiments have shown that if someone in uniform approaches members of the public and instructs them to do something, they are likely to obey.

Note also that a present perfect form may be more appropriate in the if clause than the present simple.
- If you have tried to get through to your bank by phone, you will be aware of the extent to which you are encouraged to resolve your problem online.

17.2 test yourself

A Correct the sentences.
1 If you will not give people regular information about the progress of the hurricane, they will begin to panic.
2 The wealth of a country will diminish if banks will not perform their function successfully.
3 If you will ask managers about the general skills levels of trainees, many will say that they are insufficient.
4 You will not know if a new project is successful if you will not evaluate its outcomes.
5 These regional conflicts will only be resolved if the two sides will enter into dialogue with each other.

B Complete each sentence with one of the phrases in the box. One phrase is not needed.
are likely to be can increase are going to lose should become may suffer should suffer
1 Stress levels ________________ amongst staff if management fails to communicate successfully.
2 If an important species dies out, the habitat that it lives in ________________ as well.
3 South Korea ________________ a major world economy if its present growth rate continues.
4 If a business uses raw materials to make products, there ________________ significant delays between obtaining those materials, and acquiring income from the selling of the product.
5 Supermarkets ________________ business if they do not respond to the growing consumer demand for ‘ethical’ products.

C Rewrite the sentences in B using will in the result clause.

17.3 Provided (that), unless, etc.

17.3 study

A number of words can be used in the if clause instead of if, particularly in first conditional sentences.

1 Provided (that)/as long as

Provided (that), as long as, and the slightly less formal providing that and so long as can be used to replace if when the meaning is ‘but only with the expectation that’.
- As long as/Provided that/If the public continues its love affair with the internal combustion engine, the demand for oil is unlikely to fall.
- As long as/Provided that/If you fail the exam, you will need to sit it again.
Unless, otherwise

Unless means ‘except if’.
- Apprenticeship schemes will disappear altogether unless the government takes action.
- Unless an agreement is reached at the talks in Jakarta, these unfair trade practices are likely to continue.

Otherwise means ‘because if not’.
- Local authorities need to ensure that urban areas have sufficient green spaces for public recreation. Otherwise, they can be accused of contributing to the build-up of urban stress.

On condition that, in the event that

These phrases are formal alternatives to if. They tend to be used to describe rules, or to write about legal matters.
- In the event that a candidate cannot produce ID, he or she will be unable to take the exam.
- Prisoners can sometimes be released early on condition that they agree to be electronically tagged.

TIP Even if (which is also regularly used with second and third conditionals) means ‘whether or not’.
- The government is likely to press ahead with reforms to the House of Lords even if there are objections from its own backbenchers.

17.4 Second conditionals

17.4 study

Form and use

Second conditionals are ‘unreal’ conditionals. They are called ‘unreal’ because they can be used to imagine what might happen if circumstances were different. They can be an important way of exploring behaviour and testing theories.
- If developing countries had a greater control of commodity prices, they would be able to plan their economies more efficiently.
- What do you think would happen in the UK if the law on self-defence were changed tomorrow?

Second conditionals use a past tense in the if clause, and typically would + verb in the result clause.
- If we paid in dollars instead of sterling, would we get a discount on a bulk purchase?

As with first conditionals, would can be replaced with another modal verb.
- Archaeologists might make important new discoveries if they were allowed long-term access to building sites in key areas of major cities. Instead, valuable discoveries are lost as bulldozers tear up the earth.

TIP In formal writing, were is preferred in the if clause to the singular form was.
- If fast broadband access was introduced to remote areas of the peninsula, the local population might be able to sell some of their products on the internet.

17.3 test yourself

Circle the correct option. In one sentence, both options are possible.

1 An interview process can be defended as fair unless/provided that the successful candidate satisfies the criteria listed under ‘person specifications’.
2 Commuters will not leave their cars at home. Otherwise/home unless there is a real financial incentive.
3 Accommodation is offered at no charge on condition that/provided that it is not used for commercial gain.
4 As long as/if six more volunteers cannot be found, the experiment will have to be brought to an end.
5 There will need to be a cut in the scale of fishing even if/if new stocks of fish are found.
6 We should take action against global warming not only as countries but also as individuals unless/individuals; otherwise we simply won’t produce the kind of momentum that we need.
The form *were to* + infinitive can be used in the *if* clause instead of a past simple, where it tends to make the condition even less likely to be fulfilled.

- If the business community were to replace international trade fairs entirely with online video conferences, it could lose that vital relationship when the sales team makes physical contact with retailers in the places where they live and work.

You will also hear lecturers using this structure to evaluate options.

- If we were to incinerate plastics on a large scale, what waste products would we produce?

If *were not for/Without* + noun phrase can also be used.

- If we were not for/Without easy access to solar energy, business costs in the region would be too high.

(= If businesses did not have easy access to solar energy, their costs ...)

In spoken English the words *suppose* (or *supposing*) can be used, meaning ‘what if’.

- Suppose/What if we applied that argument in every case? What would the result be?

### 17.5 Third conditionals

#### 17.5 study

Third conditionals are also ‘unreal’ conditionals. They use a past perfect tense in the *if* clause and typically *would have* + past participle in the result clause. We use them to talk about what would have happened if circumstances had been different in the past.

- If the advertising campaign *had focused* on its target audience – young professionals with disposable income – it *would have produced* more impressive increases in sales.

As with other conditionals, another modal verb can replace *would*. In this example, the use of *should* expresses a critical attitude.

- If there had been doubts about the funding of the project, an investigation *should have* followed immediately. (An investigation didn’t follow.)

Essay questions sometimes use third conditional questions.

- What *would have happened* if von Stauffenberg’s plot against Hitler *had succeeded*?
- Would there *have been* a depression if the government *had not bailed out* the banks?

In spoken English, it is quite common to use one clause only of the third conditional form. Look at this example from a seminar.

- A *It was clear to insiders that Northern Rock was having difficulties.*
- B *But no one warned the public. Why not?*
- C *Because (if people had been warned) the building society would have collapsed immediately!*
2 Changes to the if clause

Removing if and placing had at the front of the sentence makes the style slightly more formal.

- Had the party changed its policy on inheritance tax, they might have won a greater share of the middle class vote. (= If the party had changed its policy ...)

If it had not been for/Without + noun phrase ... can also be used.

- If it had not been for/Without the government’s support, the private member’s bill would never have been passed. (= If the government had not supported it, the private member’s bill ...)

Tip Sometimes you can mix the tenses that are typically used in second or third conditional sentences. In this example, a third conditional if clause is followed by a second conditional result clause because there is a present result.

- If the factory had invested in new technology, it would still be in business today.

17.5 test yourself

Correct each sentence by adding one word only.

1 Hamlin Brothers had attended the trade fair in Bologna, it might have won more orders.

2 If the office buildings in the centre of the city had better designed to withstand earthquakes, the number of deaths would have been much lower.

3 The school might not have failed the inspection if they produced a strategy for improving exam results.

4 Max Brod followed Kafka’s instructions, he would have burned the writer’s unpublished work after his death.

5 If the prosecutors had found the witness seen on the CCTV clip, they might won the case.

6 If it had been for the new computerized marking system, the college could never have processed the results in time.
**Challenge yourself**

**A** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets. What type of conditional is the sentence (zero, first, second, or third)?

1. Powerplay pic would have lost a significant share of the youth market if it __________ (increase) the price of its product.
2. I believe that I have the right attitude to revision. If I __________ (need) a break when I'm studying, I take one. It helps me to stay focused.
3. If there __________ (be) a regional centre for medical aid supplies, it would speed up the response time in emergency situations.
4. Practical skills are vital, but architects also need to maintain a sense of their initial inspiration, whatever problems they __________ (encounter) as the building work progresses.
5. We would not have been obliged to bail out the banks if we __________ (listen) to the quieter economic voices, who advised us against their riskier practices.
6. We __________ (not see) an improvement in the binge-drinking culture unless pubs and clubs begin to act more responsibly.

**B** Complete the text about ‘green retailing’, using the correct form of the verbs in the box. Use a negative form where necessary.

**wish renew act present label place be**

Environmental considerations are often only a marketing strategy, and companies can easily be accused of ‘greenwash’. Supermarkets, for example, are in the business of trying to anticipate demand. If new organic shops begin to open all over the city, then supermarkets ______ new orders for organic produce, and ______ it as ethical purchasing. But if consumer demand later dropped, they ______ those orders.

Social enterprises, on the other hand, maintain environmental policies that are as important as their equal opportunities policies. They will have a sustainable procurement policy, for example, even if this ______ just a preferred suppliers list. Furthermore, if their carbon footprint seemed excessive, they ______ to reduce it, and if their suppliers or customers ______ to learn about their decision mechanisms, they would be open to that in a way that is not common in the ordinary business community. As Carson (2010) points out, an enterprise such as Greenstock ______ itself ‘social’ if it planned to be a conventional company.

**C** Complete the words in the group discussion on prisons.

A Some people think that prison is the best punishment for criminals, but ______ judges used community service more, instead of prison sentences?
B It depends on the type of crime, though, doesn’t it?
C Exactly. ______ someone had been involved in violence, they would ______ to be kept apart from society.
B And how do you make sure that someone on community service doesn’t just disappear?
A Well, ______ tagged, the police ______ keep track of them.
D I think you’ve got a point about prison. All the statistics show that after they’re released, ex-prisoners often reoffend anyway.
B But if they ______________ the kind of education they get in prison, that situation is likely to change. Do you remember Prisoner B, for example, in last week’s case study? With some job training, he ______________ n______________ h______________ reoffended.

C Education requires additional funding, though, doesn’t it? If you’re really g__________t____________ make a difference to the standards of literacy, and so on, you’ll h______________ put a lot of money in.

A But it’s a good investment, isn’t it? If an ex-prisoner has some qualifications, they ______________ be able to find work once they’re back in society. That’s when they start to think about crime again.

---

D Correct the text about the benefits of cycling by adding the words in the box. Some sentences are correct, and some sentences need more than one word.

D: had have might lead switched be were do

1. If a substantial proportion of road users from cars to bicycles, this would an impact on the amount of road space and sheer wear and tear that the road network has to deal with. 2. Even if there a switch of 10%, it would to a measurable reduction in the need for maintenance of the infrastructure. 3. To take a very concrete example, there may be a weak spot in the road which the council knows needs to be refilled every year, or every time 100,000 cars have driven over it. 4. Provided, over a year, that only 90,000 cars so, then the maintenance can postponed for a month. 5. It is easy to see how this kind of ‘stretching’ can soon add up to significant budgetary savings. 6. A spokesperson for one local borough in London admitted that if they invested £10,000 pounds more in their cycling campaign, they have saved half a million pounds in road maintenance costs.

E Circle the correct options in the text about staff recruitment. If both are correct, circle both.

E: had to/may have to advertise a new job exclusively to internal candidates first, if/unless/provided that it is accepted practice to do so. At Benson plc HR Manager Phil Swales believes that if they advertised their new research post externally, it might have/can have produced a more interesting dynamic at the public presentation stage of the process.

When a company recruits for a post, externally or internally, an interview timetable is drawn up. If a satisfactory format exists/will exist already, this has been/can be used; otherwise/unless, a new format needed/needs to be devised.

F Write a short text (100–200 words) based on the following information, using conditional sentences as appropriate and following the instructions.

The catering company Eatwell has been doing badly for the last few years. Their senior staff have worked hard, and they have obtained some new contracts, but their ‘brand identity’ (the way in which the company wants to be seen by the customer) is not clear. Now they have appointed a new sales director to turn the company around. Write a short analysis of what went wrong, with some suggestions for the future. Begin your text, If Eatwell had...
Introduction

In an academic essay or report, it may be necessary to define a word or phrase, particularly if it occurs in the title itself. Definitions, which often occur at the beginning of a piece of writing, demonstrate that we understand key concepts, and they are sometimes important in order to clarify how a particular term is being used. They might be of the type that is found in a dictionary or be modified in some way to the context in which we are writing (as in the second and third examples below).

- A retailer is a person who sells goods to the general public, normally from a fixed location such as a shop or by mail.
- A person in China is normally defined as 'obese' by medical authorities if their body mass index exceeds 28.
- For the purposes of this report, 'humanitarian intervention' will be restricted to the use of military force against a state with the publicly declared aim of preventing human rights violations.

This unit begins by looking at short definitions and how to avoid common mistakes when defining. This is followed by a list of some of the key verbs used in defining, and a consideration of the ways in which we can extend definitions by giving examples and by making references to the history or to the typical characteristics of the things being defined.

Unit contents
1. Be + relative clause page 161
2. By which, for page 161
3. Describe, be defined as page 162
4. Extending definitions page 163

Other units in this book that deal with defining language are unit 3 Noun phrases, unit 5 Relative clauses, and unit 12 Talking about cause and effect.
18.1 Be + relative clause

1 Typical pattern

A defining sentence often follows this pattern: term (the thing being defined) + be + class (the wider group that the term belongs to) + relative clause.

- A Special Economic Zone (term) is a geographical area (class) which is allowed greater economic freedom than other parts of the country (relative clause).

Try to avoid repeating the term, or a different form of the term, in your definition.

- A credit bureau is an agency that can provide information on whether individual consumers are credit-worthy have shown that they are able to pay off loans and bills.

Don't forget the class noun, or make it too general.

- A white dwarf can be located by the faint light that it emits.
- A dingo is a species of wild animal dog, which is normally found in the Australian Outback.

2 Use of a/an and the

There is usually an indefinite article (a/an) before the term and before the class. However, there are times when you cannot use a/an in front of a term noun, such as when it is plural or uncountable.

- A sociolect is a dialect which is associated with a particular social class.
- Maize is a cereal grain that originated in Mesoamerica.

There are times when it is also inappropriate to use a/an in front of the class noun.

- Lithium is the lightest element that is not a gas at room temperature.

For more information on articles, see unit 3 Noun phrases.

Make sure that your definition is not just an example.

- An illuminated gospel is a document such as The Book of Kells, held in Trinity College Library, Dublin, a representation of the New Testament in the calligraphic style known as 'Insular art', which is normally produced by monks. (Now you could continue: A good example of this is The Book of Kells, held in Trinity College Library, Dublin.)

See section 18.4 for more ways of extending definitions.

18.1 test yourself

Complete the definitions with a term and a class noun from the box and is/are.

- the day of the year a parasite
- a court order a program a carcinogen
- food products an injunction
- the summer solstice perishables
- a substance a virus an organism

1 __________________ that can reproduce itself and be transmitted between computers.
2 __________________ that will decay and become inedible over time.
3 __________________ that lives on or inside another organism, feeding at the host's expense.
4 __________________ which has the longest period of daylight.
5 __________________ that is directly involved in causing cancer.
6 __________________ which states that a person or organization must or must not do something.

18.2 By which, for

A number of class nouns are typically followed by by which, whereby, or for + -ing form.

1 By which, whereby

In definitions, class nouns such as process, means, method, system, and technique are often followed by a relative clause beginning with by which or whereby.

- Criminal law is the means by which the government identifies behaviour considered wrong or damaging to individuals and society.
- 'Scumbling' is a painting technique by which the artist applies a very thin coating of colour, allowing the paint underneath to show through.
- Remortgaging is the process by which the holder of a mortgage pays it off with the proceeds of a new mortgage, using the same property as security.
Class nouns such as device, gadget, implement, instrument, machine, mechanism, and tool are often followed by for + -ing form of the verb.

- In genetics, a ‘viral vector’ is a tool for delivering genetic material into cells.
- A ‘mute’ is a device for altering the sound of a musical instrument.
- A Geiger counter is a machine for measuring levels of radiation.

### 18.2 test yourself
Correct the incorrect sentences. Some sentences are already correct.

1. Electronic fund transfer is the system for money is moved between accounts by computer.

2. Privatization is the process by which an organization is transferred from public to private ownership.

3. A transmission electron microscope is an instrument whereby screening human tissue at high magnification.

4. Barter is a method which goods or services are exchanged without using money.

5. The Retail Prices Index is a mechanism for measuring the rate of inflation.

6. A harrow is an agricultural implement for break up and smooth the soil.

### 18.3 Describe, be defined as

#### 18.3 study

There are a number of verbs, in addition to be, that are often used in definitions.

1. **Describe, designate, mean, refer to, signify**

Definitions using these verbs sometimes begin with *The term ...*, *The word ...*, or *The phrase ...*.

- The word democracy literally means ‘people power’ since ‘demos’ is Greek for ‘of the people’, and ‘kratos’ designates ‘power’.
- The term ‘lieutenant’ normally refers to a person who is second in command.
- The suffix ‘-able’ normally signifies a capability to perform specific actions.
- The phrase ‘organic food’ describes any foodstuff that is produced without the intervention of pesticides, chemical fertilizers, and genetically-modified organisms.

### 18.2 test yourself

Reorder the underlined words to make correct definitions. Add capital letters where necessary.

1. In most dictionaries, *as is defined literacy* the ability to read and write.

2. An the alloy ‘stainless steel’ term describes of steel and chromium that is resistant to corrosion.

3. An organism that can cause a *as is pathogen disease known.*

4. As be the could defined ‘people power’ force that resides in the general public to oppose the status quo.

5. To the the moral ‘ethics’ principles word refers that underpin a person’s or an organisation’s behaviour.

6. Alterations term statistical designates the ‘climate change’ to the meteorological system over very long periods of time.
18.4 Extending definitions

18.4 study

In the examples below, definitions that you have already seen in this unit are extended in three different ways. Note the useful language in bold.

1 Extending by examples

• The suffix ‘-able’ normally signifies a capability to perform specific actions. ‘Clickable’, indicating a hyperlinked image or text area, is an interesting recent example from computing terminology.

• ‘Scumbling’ is a painting technique whereby the artist applies a very thin coating of colour, allowing the paint underneath to show through. This process is exemplified in the work of the Dutch painter Jan van Eyck, where the scumbling is said to add depth and gradation to some of his work.

• A white dwarf is a small dense star that can be located by the faint light that it emits. Sirius B, monitored by the Hubble Space Telescope, is an example of such a star.

2 Extending by reference to history

• In genetics, a ‘viral vector’ is a tool for delivering genetic material into cells. Paul Berg was the first molecular biologist to use the vector in the 1970s when he successfully infected monkey kidney cells.

Apart from the words first + use as above, the following verbs can all be used to write about the person who ‘invented’ the term: coin, create, devise and invent.

• James Watt coined the term ‘horsepower’ in order to compare the output of steam engines with the power of horses.

3 Extending by reference to characteristics or types

• The dingo is a species of wild dog, normally found in the Australian Outback. There are three main types of dingo: the alpine, the desert, and the tropical.

• A ‘mute’ is a device for altering the sound of a musical instrument. The ‘straight mute’, tipped with cork to hold it in place, is the most common type in brass instruments.

18.4 test yourself

Complete the sentences, using one of the words or phrases in the box in each space.

was first recognized is an example observed coined can be exemplified

1 A virus is a program that can reproduce itself and be transmitted between computers. According to his colleague, Fred Cohen (1984), the term ‘virus’ in connection with computers was first_________________by Leonard Adleman, now Professor of Computing Science at the University of Southern California.

2 A parasite is an organism that lives on or inside another organism, feeding at the host’s expense. The parasitic worm, which lives inside its host, ___________________of such an organism.

3 A carcinogen is a substance that is directly involved in causing cancer. There ___________________of carcinogen, as classified by the International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC).

4 The term ‘stainless steel’ describes an alloy of steel and chromium that is resistant to corrosion. This quality in alloys was first_________________by metallurgist Pierre Berthier, who _____________________their resistance against attack by acids.

5 Privatization is the process by which an organization is transferred from public to private ownership. This process _____________________in the UK by the transfer of British Telecom and British Gas into the private sector during the 1980s under the Thatcher administration.
18 Challenge yourself

A Complete the text, using the words in the box.

coined describes examples is means refer which (x2)

Permaculture 1________ a system of ecological design 2________ bases itself around sustainable agriculture. Bill Mollison 3________ permaculture as ‘a philosophy of working with, rather than against nature’. Franklin Hiram King 4________ the phrase ‘permanent agriculture’ in his 1911 book, Farmers of Forty Centuries or Permanent Agriculture in China, Korea and Japan. As he used it, the phrase 5________ types of farming methods and land management techniques 6_________ can continue indefinitely. More recently, the two words, 'permanent agriculture’, became one: ‘permaculture’. This new term can also 7_________ to ‘permanent culture’, that is, to a theory of development that includes social aspects as well as material production. 8_________ of permaculture are agroforestry and rainwater harvesting.

B Put the words in the correct order to complete the text.

1 a as be defined ‘domestic violence’ may of pattern term the
2 as can forms, it many such take
3 as by defined is it more narrowly Oxford Dictionary of Law the
4 also can it mean
5 all be can expressed in of these types various violence ways
6 a abuse abusive behaviour form is of verbal which

1 __________________ abusive behaviours by one partner against another in a marriage or marriage-like relationship. 2 _______________ physical aggression or assault, sexual or emotional abuse, intimidation, or stalking. 3 _______________ ‘physical violence inflicted on a person by their husband, wife, or cohabitant’. Experts in the field, however, such as Smith (2007), agree that it is not limited to obvious physical violence; 4 _______________ endangerment, criminal coercion, or kidnapping.

The phrase ‘intimate partner violence’ has become synonymous with domestic violence, superseding the terms ‘wife abuse’ and ‘wife beating’. Family violence is more of an umbrella term, encompassing child abuse, elder abuse, and other intra-familial acts of violence. 5 _______________: physically, psychologically, sexually, financially, and so on. 6 _______________ involves the use of language. Verbal abuse may include actions such as swearing, ridicule, and disrespect.

C Correct the mistakes in the underlined phrases. Some phrases are correct.

Telemedicine 1________ is defined as the delivery of clinical health care remotely, that is, at a distance. The term 2________ coined to deal with the use of telecommunications to bridge the gap between doctor and patient. At first, this type of telemedicine 3________ was exemplified the use of VHF radios; now, video conversations (e.g. Skype) are the norm. Telemedicine is a system 4_________ to delivering basic and continuing care, such as monitoring a chronic condition. The newest arm of the field is robotic surgery, 5_________ wherefore a human surgeon in one place can direct a robot hand to operate on a patient in another location.

Telemedicine 6________ is not referring to the type of medical care in which a doctor or nurse travels to remote areas. The 7_________ first and best-known example of this is the Royal Flying Doctor Service of Australia.
Telehealth is a broader term. It is referring to remote healthcare in a wider sense: not only the delivery of clinical services, but also administration and education accessed at a distance. Electronic health records are one example of the former, and training videos of the latter. A further development of telehealth are the gadgets for monitoring health conditions at home. Telehealth signifies the curative aspect of medicine, and also its preventative function.

D Circle the correct option (a–d) to complete the text.

Let me start my talk by defining my terms. When we speak colloquially of clones, we are usually the science-fiction scenarios. You might have seen the film Never Let Me Go, about children created in order to serve as organ donors to the ‘original’ who commissioned them, or perhaps your thoughts turn to rows of identical figures, bred to serve society in exactly the same way, as in Aldous Huxley’s Brave New World. That is not what scientists cloning, and it is not what my talk is about today.

Biologists use the term cloning any form of reproduction ends up with genetically identical copies to the original. This occurs widely in nature. Take bacteria. They simply divide and multiply, each daughter cell is the same as the mother. There are three types of cloning that I’d like to concentrate on: at the level of molecules, at the cell level, and at the level of the whole plant or animal.

Molecular cloning just lots of copies of a given molecule. It is a technique for assembling DNA molecules. It has become very important in many branches of medicine and biology.

The term cellular cloning is more complicated. It a cell from an adult organism, removing the DNA, and inserting that into an egg which has had its nucleus removed. The purpose of this is to create an embryo, which can then be used for stem cell research. This process is also somatic cell nuclear transfer. ‘Somatic’ of or about the body, because the cell can come from anywhere in the body. ‘Nuclear’ refers here to the nucleus of a cell, where the genetic material is stored.

So, the final type: whole organism cloning. Many plants are spread, in nature and by humans, in a way that makes each resulting plant a clone of the original. It’s vegetative propagation, and I can go into that in more detail if you’d like me to at the end.

E Write extended definitions (50–100 words) of two or three of the following.

Remember, you can extend by examples, by reference to history, or by reference to characteristics or types.

- a species of animal typical in your country
- a plant, flower, fruit, or vegetable
- a national holiday (e.g. President’s Day)
- a branch of business (e.g. marketing or finance)
Introduction

Words that work naturally with each other and which are used together frequently, such as heavy traffic, are called 'collocations'. Complete the table with the six underlined collocations in the text.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 Noun + noun</th>
<th>2 Adjective + noun</th>
<th>3 Verb + adverb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

The latest figures from the Office for National Statistics establish conclusively that we are seeing a significant reduction in the number of UK residents making visits abroad. The evidence that has been gathered by government officials shows a fall in 2010 of three million visits. Travel disruptions, the exchange rate, and economic hardship are likely to be responsible for this decline.

Suggested answers: see page 211

Collocations are often defined as 'words that go together'. A knowledge of collocations is important because it allows you to speak and write more naturally. This means that you will be more easily understood by native speakers who will expect to hear particular combinations of words. In the text above, for example, you could say a large reduction, but the adjective significant collocates better. (Significant also collocates well with other nouns such as impact and proportion.) Similarly, fiercely competitive is more natural than strongly competitive; and native speakers say a big mistake but not a big error: instead, they use serious or major with error.

In this unit, a selection of useful collocations for academic English is divided into four grammatical categories.

1 Adjective-noun collocations
- There is a widespread belief that a life led close to nature is a more virtuous one than that of a city-dweller.

2 Adverb-adjective collocations
- Texans are justifiably proud of Sam Houston, the first President of the Republic of Texas.

3 Verb + noun; verb + adverb
- After carrying out an assessment, the NHS decides what services they can offer to support home carers.
- The local authority responded favourably to the museum’s request for additional funding.

4 Noun + noun
- A formula exists to produce films which will meet the important commercial criterion of ‘family entertainment’.

Note that collocations dictionaries, such as the Oxford Collocations Dictionary for Students of English, are available in bookshops and online.

See also unit 3 Noun phrases for the grammar of noun + noun combinations, and unit 6 Stating facts and opinions for verbs, nouns and adjectives that collocate with the words data, evidence, fact(s), information, and statistics.
19.1 Adjective + noun

19.1 study

In this section, twelve key adjectives with their frequent noun collocations are listed in three groups.

1 Adjectives of size and impact

considerable + amount, degree, difference(s), doubt(s), extent, impact, influence, interest, number, power, risk
important + aspect, contribution, decision(s), difference(s), point(s), question(s), reason(s)
major + change(s), concern(s), contribution, difference(s), factor(s), issue, problem(s), role, theme
significant + difference(s), effect, impact, increase, number, part, proportion, reduction
widespread + allegations, assumption, belief, destruction, opposition, practice, protests, support, use

2 Adjectives connected with areas of influence

economic + conditions, decline, difficulties, factor(s), hardship, policy/ies, prosperity, status, success
financial + burden, controls, crisis, data, implications, institutions, position, risk(s), security, support, world
political + agenda, factor(s), landscape, party, power, reform, rights, stability, system
social + class, factor(s), mobility, network(s), policy/ies, problems, relationships

3 Limiting adjectives

local + area, authorities, businesses, community/ies, economy, government, people
relevant + data, details, documents, example, factor(s), information, point
specific + case(s), characteristic(s), conditions, context, example, information, purpose, type(s)

19.1 test yourself

Circle the most appropriate option.

1 Transport infrastructure is a major contribution/theme/power in business development seminars these days.
2 Could you give a specific purpose/example/point of acid rain causing serious damage?
3 Political stability/solidity/reliability is a pre-condition for most types of national wealth-creating plans.
4 Russia still has considerable emphasis/influence/weight on the independent states of Central Asia.

5 There is a widespread thought/point/belief that social mobility/movement/flow is dependent on educational opportunities.
6 Small businesses have a significant pressure/impact/force on a country’s economic richness/rise/prosperity.

19.2 Adverb + adjective

19.2 study

In adverb + adjective collocations, the adverb either intensifies the adjective (highly experienced), or it adds meaning (recently published).

As with adjectives, adverb + adjective collocations can either stand on their own after the verbs be, appear, become, look, and seem, or precede a noun.

• If a local workforce is to become highly skilled, education providers and businesses need to work together.
• The government has announced that it plans to create a new form of privately-financed university.

1 Intensifying adverbs

In this group, the adverbs make the adjectives stronger.

conspicuously absent (= surprising that the person or thing is not present: the CEO was conspicuously absent from the meeting with furious shareholders)
barely adequate (= at an almost unacceptably low standard)
generously compensated
fiercely competitive
strictly confidential
seriously delayed
severely delayed
carefully documented (a carefully documented report is one that is based on a good and thorough use of evidence)
highly experienced
heavily fortified (often used in military contexts: the rebel leader’s heavily fortified headquarters)
critically ill
deeply offensive/offended
meticulously planned
densely populated
immensely powerful
highly qualified
strictly regulated
extensively reported
profoundly sceptical (= very doubtful)
highly skilled
2 Adverbs that add meaning

In many other adverb + adjective collocations, the adverb has a specific meaning rather than an intensifying effect.

Here are some examples:
- *casually employed* (= not given a permanent contract of work)
- *evenly matched* (used to describe the two sides in a contest, argument, etc.)
- *falsely accused* (= incorrectly accused)
- *justifiably proud* (= proud with good reason)
- *largely justified* (= not completely justified)
- *mainly theoretical* (= with very little practical application)
- *newly appointed* (used to describe someone who has very recently been recruited to a post)
- *privately financed, publicly financed* (often used to describe construction projects)
- *recently published* (= published not long ago)
- *wrongfully imprisoned* (= put in prison even though innocent)

*Well* and *badly* collocate usefully with many adjectives, e.g. *well or badly designed or constructed*. *Badly worded* means ‘poorly written’. Note that *badly advised* means ‘given poor advice’ but *well advised* is used in contexts such as:
- Nolan plc would be well advised to pay compensation before its reputation suffers further. (= it would be a good idea for Nolan plc to pay compensation)

19.2 test yourself

Complete each sentence with one of the adverbs in the box. Three adverbs are not needed.

- minimally
- barely
- deeply
- incorrectly
- mainly
- casually
- informally
- severely
- wrongfully

1. Most fruit pickers are ___________ employed, and are sometimes offered basic accommodation.
2. It was proved on appeal that all three men had been ___________ imprisoned.
3. Some critics attacked the TV programme, describing it as ___________ offensive.
4. Supplies to the villages were ___________ delayed by the collapse of two bridges, making the overall situation much worse.
5. Simpson (2009) suggests that facilities for the athletes were ___________ adequate.
6. The work carried out by Grigson on artificial intelligence was ___________ theoretical.

19.3 study

The list below focuses on selected verbs, showing common noun and adverb collocations.

- *analyse*: the data, the evidence, the results
- *analyse*: closely, in depth, in detail, systematically
- *carry out*: an analysis, an assessment, an experiment, an investigation, a survey, a task
- *carry out*: fully, systematically
- *consider*: the evidence, the options
- *consider*: carefully, seriously
- *deal with*: an issue, a problem, the situation
- *deal with*: effectively, swiftly
- *demonstrate*: the importance (of), the need (for)
- *demonstrate*: clearly, conclusively
- *deny*: the accusation, the allegation
- *deny*: categorically, strenuously
- *discuss*: an idea, an issue, a problem, a question
- *discuss*: at length, briefly, thoroughly
- *establish*: the connection, the relationship (between)
- *establish*: conclusively, firmly
- *examine*: the evidence, the facts
- *examine*: critically, thoroughly
- *identify*: the causes (of), the factors (leading to)
- *identify*: clearly, straightaway
- *raise*: awareness, funds, morale, questions, standards
- *refer to*: frequently, in passing, obliquely, specifically
- *resolve*: an argument, a conflict, a dispute, an issue, a problem
- *resolve*: eventually, speedily
- *respond to*: an idea, a plan, a proposal
- *respond to*: favourably, negatively, positively
- *result in*: automatically, inevitably
- *study*: conclusions, data, results, the situation
- *study*: closely, in depth, in detail, thoroughly
suppress: evidence, personal freedom, protests, a rebellion, social unrest
suppress: brutally, ruthlessly
write: authoritatively, convincingly, knowledgeably (on)

19.3 test yourself
Complete each sentence with the correct form of one of the verbs in the box.
consider suppress raise deny resolve demonstrate
1 Narrative structure normally involves some kind of conflict which is eventually ___________ at the end of the story.
2 The purpose of the conference was to ___________ awareness amongst doctors of the pressures on parents caring at home for children with disabilities.
3 Billings describes how the regime has brutally ___________ all protests by opposition groups.
4 Dalston’s research ___________ conclusively that two of the local languages had no written form.
5 Senior managers at the company ___________ categorically that they had encouraged a culture of bullying to develop in the workplace.
6 The enquiry panel ___________ the evidence carefully over a period of six weeks in early 2009.

19.4 Noun + noun
19.4 study
Just as nouns are combined in everyday English (table lamp, horse race), so nouns collocate with each other in all types of writing and speaking. For an explanation of the grammar of noun + noun combinations, see page 032 in unit 3 Noun phrases.

Listed below are seven of the most productive ‘head nouns’ (the nouns that come first in combinations) in general and academic writing, with some of their most frequent noun collocations. Note that some second nouns are regularly used in singular and plural forms, (business trip(s)); some are never used in plural forms because they are uncountable (market growth); some are normally used in plural form (health cuts); and some are normally used in singular form (computer age).

business + community/ies, dealings, empire(s), environment, interests, objective(s), opportunity/ies, relationship(s), trip(s)

computer + age, animation, error(s), graphics, hardware, interface, model(s), problem(s), program(s), software, studies

family + background, business(es), car(s), doctor(s), entertainment, event(s), friend(s), photo(s), problem(s), wedding(s)

government + agency/ies, approval, bonds, control(s), decision(s), grant(s), minister(s), official(s), plan(s), policy/ies, regulation(s)

health + advice, centre(s), concern(s), cuts, hazard(s), industry/ies, issue(s), policy/ies, score(s), service(s), treatment(s), worker(s)

market + crash(es), economy/ies, force(s), growth, penetration, potential, rate(s), research, saturation, segmentation

research + centre(s), data, evidence, findings, funding, grant(s), interests, methods, project(s), proposal(s), scientist(s), team(s)

19.4 test yourself
Circle the most appropriate option.
1 Halliwell’s pic has maintained a solid performance in a very difficult business economy/environment/background.
2 The first film to take some advantage of computer studies/entertainment/animation was Westworld (1973).
3 Walter Scott’s family background/issues/dealings, particularly his grandparents’ home at Sandyknowe Farm, played a key role in the development of his romantic imagination.
4 The educational work of the charity Mindset has been put at risk by the loss of two substantial government revenues/incomes/grants.
5 Syms (2010) emphasizes that rural health workers/doctors/officers in developing countries are the stimulus behind regional progress in medicine.
6 With the withdrawal of central funding, many universities will now have to come to terms with working in the commercial world of market issues/forces/problems.
A Complete the words in the text about a scientific hoax.

There has been 'co___________ interest in the case of Piltdown Man, not for what it reveals about the evolution of mankind but for the way in which it demonstrates so 'cl___________ the 'im___________ powerful desire in humans to, as Carmichael (2004:2) describes it, 'believe against the facts'. When Charles Dawson announced in 1912 that fragments of an early human skull had been discovered at the Piltdown gravel pit, many of his colleagues in the scientific community were profoundly 'sc___________, responding to his 'pro___________ that the find might represent the 'missing link' between humans and apes with a strong measure of disbelief.

Despite these doubts and the publication of a 'ca___________ documented article (Waterson, 1913) within a year of the discovery, arguing that Piltdown Man's jawbone was that of an ape rather than a human, some forty years were to pass before it was established 'con___________ by Oakley and Clark (1953) that the skull was a forgery. This time lapse can be explained in part by the 'fi___________ competitive atmosphere in which contemporary paleontologists operated. As Brooker (2001) suggests, there was a 'wi___________ assumption that, after 'imp___________ contributions to the science of evolution had been made by fossil discoveries in Germany and France, Britain's turn had come.

B Complete the text about newspaper regulation, using the words in the box. Not all of the words are needed.

Government 1___________ towards the regulation of newspapers has been analysed in 2___________ over the last ten years. Carr (2008) points out that the ruling party's 3___________ agenda at any given time seeks to balance two almost contradictory aims: a genuine aspiration to preserve the ancient freedoms of the country, and a desire to demonstrate the 4___________ for controls to satisfy a public that is often 5___________ offended by intrusions into the private lives of British citizens. Recent allegations of phone hacking, 6___________ denied by some journalists and admitted by others, have served to 7___________ awareness of an issue that should, according to Patel (2009), have been resolved in a much more timely fashion.

The fact that victims of press intrusion have been 8___________ compensated by the newspapers responsible, and that these payments have been 9___________ reported, is unlikely to lessen the demands for a legal framework to be established. Such a framework would need to give the public confidence that when journalists carry out an 10___________, they 11___________ carefully the penalties they face if it is later discovered that they have behaved improperly. As Wooller (2010) argues, the penalties that currently exist are regarded by many members of the public as barely 12___________.
Circle the more appropriate option to complete the text about educational achievement.

Family information/background and social class/category are two of the elements that are studied closely/completely by researchers examining the likelihood that children will take advantage of the educational opportunities that are offered to them. As far as the first of these is concerned, the behaviour of a child's parents will inevitably have a large/considerable influence on his or her performance at school, but not always in the ways that might be expected. Billings (2003), for example, points out that an important contradiction/difference between one set of parents and another may not lie in what they achieve in terms of their educational qualifications, but rather in their attitude to the concept of learning. Berryford (2006, cited in Morgan, 2009) confirms this, establishing a clear bond/connection in her research findings/discoveries between the positive views that some parents express at home towards the acquisition of knowledge, and improvement at school amongst their offspring. Some of the evidence that she thinks about/considers may seem superficial: she notes for example, that in households where books are conspicuously/detectably absent, the child’s attitude towards the textbooks that are consulted in class appears to be ‘less favourable’ (ibid.), but in terms of naming/identifying the causes of underachievement at school, the link between home and school seems to be clear.

Match pairs of words in the box to create collocations, then use the collocations to complete the text about the decline in high-street shopping.

social business recently respond significant economic market specific inevitably local context published networks reduction community positively conditions forces result authorities

The in Stockport is currently considering the options for reviving the shopping opportunities in the town centre. The in which discussions are taking place is a study that indicates that Stockport has one of the highest rates of town centre shop closure in the country.

There are conflicting views of the that have led to the closing of familiar high street shops. Peterson (2010) makes the simplest case, arguing that have attracted the mobile consumer to out-of-town retail outlets, and that this will in the decline of high-street shopping. Clark and Westbrook (2011) contend, in contrast, that treat small town centre retailers unfairly in the rates and rents that are charged.

An argument put forward by Smalley (2010) suggests that it is in our long-term interests to the crisis facing the high street in order to preserve the that local shopping promotes. He claims that in commercial town centre activity can lead to an increase in social alienation.

Use collocations to write 100–200 words about the health services [hospitals, clinics, doctors, etc.] in your country. How do experts, commentators, and health workers view them? What position do politicians take? What do the general public feel about the quality of service?
Introduction

Cohesion describes the process of referring to other parts of a text, using words like they, this, and some to create a well-organized piece of writing. The careful and correct use of cohesive devices is important in academic English because of the likely complexity of the arguments being presented.

The most common cohesive devices are personal pronouns (she, him, its, their, etc.), demonstrative pronouns (this, that, these, those), and words such as the same, both, some, and respectively.

- The refrigerated unit of a supermarket is often its single biggest area.
- The suburbs are considered to be safer than inner-city areas. This is why some people choose to live there.
- Not all eco-friendly business want to be labelled 'green'. Some, in fact, distance themselves from the term.

Most of the time these devices are used to refer backwards to things already mentioned but, as you can see in the example below, it is also possible to refer forwards.

- Placing a job advertisement on the internet may result in applications from around the world. Until they (refers forwards to the candidates) notice the opportunity, some of the candidates may never have thought of working outside their home country.

This unit covers all of the reference words above and also looks at the role of ellipsis (leaving words out) in cohesion.

**Unit contents**

1. Personal pronouns page 173
2. This, these, that, those page 173
3. The, such, the same, one, both, etc. page 175
4. Former, latter, respectively, etc. page 176
5. Ellipsis page 177

Other units that deal with cohesion are unit 5 Relative clauses, and unit 7 Connectors (because all connectors link one part of the text to another).
20.1 study

The following pronouns are all commonly used as cohesive devices in writing: the subject pronouns he/she/it and they; the object pronouns him/her/it and them; and the possessive adjectives his/her/its and their.

- A new mother is most at ease when she feels that the hospital has given her all the information she needs.
- Some commentators talk as if markets were living beings, investing them with human characteristics such as greed.
- Staff may naturally become demoralized if they are told they may be losing their jobs. The manager’s role in this situation is to ease tensions, although this may be difficult if his or her job is also at risk.

In spoken and less formal English, his or her (as in his or her job above) may be replaced by their, and he or she can be replaced by they.

Mistakes that are sometimes made with these pronouns include getting the number wrong (singular when it should be plural and vice versa) and not making it clear what the pronoun refers to.

- Archiving files online has some advantages over storing material on disc. Their Its usefulness lies in employees being able to access information from any location. (Although files is plural, archiving files as an idea is singular.)
- English-English dictionaries are more useful for international students than bilingual dictionaries, because they do not have enough information on words.

In the example above they could refer to either English-English dictionaries or bilingual dictionaries. The writer hasn’t made it clear. It is better to keep to a single noun in the first clause so that it is clear what any pronoun in the second clause refers to.

Assuming that the writer was using they to refer to bilingual dictionaries, the sentence could be rewritten as:

- English-English dictionaries have more information on words, and they are therefore more useful for international students than bilingual dictionaries.

TIP Remember that the possessive adjective its is quite different from it’s which means ‘it is’ or ‘it has’.

20.2 This, these, that, those

20.2 study

1 This and these in general

This and its plural form these can refer to a specific noun phrase that has recently been mentioned.

- The government is planning to introduce a new law on privacy. If it were to be passed, this legislation would add an extra layer of protection to the existing laws.
- (in a presentation) There are two questions we can ask about global warming: ‘What will be the result if we do not act?’ and ‘What actions can we take?’ I will try to provide answers to both of these (questions).

Frequently, however, this is used on its own to refer to a whole ‘idea’.
- Consumers now expect their favourite fruit and vegetables to be available all year round. This means that food must be imported from great distances. (this = consumers expecting fruit and vegetables to be available all year round)
2 This and these with summarizing nouns

This and these are used with nouns that summarize a recent argument.
- There have been several recent stories of parents overstepping the boundaries to help their children at school. This phenomenon, known as ‘helicopter parenting’, is satirized in the novel May Contain Nuts.
- Cities work best when the traffic flows freely. Workers are most productive when they feel fit and well. A city with a strong cycling programme can achieve both of these objectives.

TIP Note that you can also refer forwards, as in this example from a presentation.
- And so we come, I believe, to this conclusion: the war against drugs is essentially unwinnable.

Nouns regularly used with this and, in their plural form with these, include:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>advance</th>
<th>discussion</th>
<th>policy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>advice</td>
<td>drop</td>
<td>problem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amount</td>
<td>estimate</td>
<td>proposal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>area</td>
<td>example</td>
<td>reduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>argument</td>
<td>explanation</td>
<td>remark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>change</td>
<td>fail</td>
<td>report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>claim</td>
<td>idea</td>
<td>rise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comment</td>
<td>increase</td>
<td>situation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conclusion</td>
<td>issue</td>
<td>subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crisis</td>
<td>measure</td>
<td>suggestion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>criticism</td>
<td>method</td>
<td>system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>description</td>
<td>misunderstanding</td>
<td>trend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>development</td>
<td>number</td>
<td>view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difficulty</td>
<td>objective</td>
<td>warning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disagreement</td>
<td>phenomenon</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 That and those

That and the plural form those can also be used to refer to a specific noun phrase that has recently been mentioned, but they tend to express a greater distance from the writer. The distance expressed by that and those may be in time, or it may be in ‘emotional’ distance.
- In those days, women were unable to pursue careers as research scientists at Canadian universities. Maude Menten therefore left for the USA shortly after receiving her doctorate in medicine in 1911.
- Long writes that longer prison sentences are an appropriate expression of the public view of criminal behaviour. If that argument is accepted, however, then the UK prison population will rise to an almost unmanageable level. (Using that argument indicates that the writer may not agree with it.)

In academic writing, that and those are sometimes post-modified. (See page 028 for an explanation of post-modify.)
- The process of making marmalade is similar to this that of making jam, except that a particular type of orange is required. (that = the process)
- The general public is made up of two distinct types of people: those who see themselves as an important part of the political process, and these those who do not even trouble themselves to vote. (those = the people)

20.2 test yourself

A Replace part of the underlined sentence with the word or phrase in brackets.
1 More and more businesses are going bankrupt in the second six months of their existence. The increased number of businesses going bankrupt needs to be examined in the overall context of the current economic situation, (this trend)
2 The arctic wolf would seem to be the natural predator of the buffalo. Mitchell (2009) argues, however, that the hunting of buffalo by wolves was not always how these two species behaved in the wild, (this)
3 Economic sanctions against the regime will be put in place shortly by the EU. Sanctions against the regime are likely to result in greater hardship for the general population, (these measures)
4 Consumer loyalty can be vital to the success of a company. The importance of loyalty was confirmed in a recent study by Stevens and Black (2011), who examined the recent performance of 25 companies, (this)
5 Anders and Silver do not share the same views on stem cell research. A series of articles published in 2010 first made the fact that they have different opinions public, (this disagreement)

B Complete each sentence with this, that, these, or those.
1 Throughout ___________ report, we will refer to the experiments that took place at the Lever Laboratories in 2001.
2 In the early part of ___________ century, during the 1820s, André-Marie Ampère was developing his groundbreaking theory of electrodynamics.
3 Armstrong (2001) criticized ___________ who had withheld their taxes in support of unilateral nuclear disarmament.
4 In her study Clements (2006) explores two ideas: that most languages are much more complicated than they need to be, and that they change for sociohistorical reasons, rather than by chance.

5 The argument put forward by Keller (2008) is different from presented by Fischer and Bly (2004).

20.3 The, such, the same, one, both, etc.

20.3 study

1. The, such

One of the uses of the definite article the is to show that information has already been mentioned.

- Aruna Kumari set up a mail order business and two retail outlets in 1986. While the shops soon closed, the mail order business went on to become one of the region’s most successful SMEs.

Such (a/an) meaning ‘of the kind already mentioned’ is common in academic English. With singular nouns, use such + a/an; with uncountable nouns and plurals, use such.

- Some quite small areas – Papua New Guinea, for example – account for a disproportionate share of the world’s languages. Such places, unsurprisingly, are a magnet for linguistic study.

- Some writers on the subject have argued that time may be circular rather than linear, and that if such a theory holds true, then time travel itself is theoretically possible.

2. The same, (the) other, another

To emphasize that you are referring exactly to the person or thing mentioned before, you can use the same.

- All of these small relief projects are endangered by a lack of water. The same problem affects the larger efforts required to improve the region’s infrastructure.

By using (the) other or another, you refer the reader to related examples of the thing mentioned.

- There is a lack of housing in the south of England. In other parts of the country, improvement to the existing housing stock could offer a way forward.

20.3 test yourself

Complete each sentence with one of the words in the box. One word is not needed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>same</th>
<th>the</th>
<th>such</th>
<th>few</th>
<th>many</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>both</td>
<td>other</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. The rumours of budgetary cutbacks may have two effects on staff: one is uncertainty; the ____________ may be suspicion that senior managers know more than they are revealing.

2. Early Himalayan climbers often returned with little to show for their efforts; ___________ were ill-equipped for the sudden changes in weather.

3. A casual employee may perform well in a post for months, but when ___________ post is advertised, their candidacy is often unsuccessful.

4. New York State is often confused with New York City, since both bear the ___________ name.

5. A bookshop these days can be made of bricks and mortar or be virtual or, increasingly, be ___________.

6. An ageing population has a profound effect on medical spending, because although younger people incur ___________ expenditure, old people incur far more.
20.4 Former, latter, respectively, etc.

20.4 study

The former, the latter, respectively, above, and below are all used in formal writing to make specific references to other parts of the text.

1 The former, the latter

When you mention two things and then want to refer back to them, the former means the first one you mentioned, and the latter means the second.

- There is an immediate visible difference between whale hunting and whale watching businesses: the former use an expensive fleet of specialized factory ships, and the latter carry out their trade in small- to medium-sized vessels that are away from shore for only a few hours.

2 Respectively

Respectively means ‘in the order in which I mentioned them’.

- Michael Sims and Joanna Stevens, the owner and general manager of Border Wool Mills respectively, were both present at the meeting which agreed the final merger with Woolcraft plc. (= Sims is the owner; Stevens is the general manager.)

3 Above, etc.

Above refers to something immediately before or something anywhere before.

- In the graph above, it can be seen that sales of flats to first-time buyers declined by 20% in the first quarter.
- In the part of this essay above on endowment mortgages, it was suggested that ...

In the preceding section/paragraph, ... refers the reader to the part of the text immediately before the one being read.

- In the preceding section of this report, we attempted to explain the reasons for economic growth in South Korea; now we will try to predict the extent to which this growth is sustainable.

As we have seen, ... is used for a general reference to what has been written up to that point in an essay, report, article, etc.

- As we have seen, current planning laws present a number of barriers to new housing developments.

The phrase as we saw + in the first part of this essay/on page 2, etc. uses the past simple tense because reference is being made to a specific piece of previous text.

- As we saw in Table 3.2, unemployment has affected young people disproportionately.

4 Below, etc.

Below refers the reader forwards, to information that comes immediately afterwards or later on in the text.

- In the example below from Branner (2009), we can see two competing aims at work. (You could also say In the following example from ...) All of the statistics below, in the final section of the report, are regularly updated on the website of the Office for National Statistics.

As we shall see in the next part of/later in, etc. this essay, ... can also be used to refer forwards.

20.4 test yourself

Complete each sentence with one of the words or phrases in the box.

the former the latter respectively above below

1 We shall see in the section __________ how this result was obtained.
2 Funding for the new opera house came from the state and from private philanthropy; __________ source represents a major achievement by Barbara Hultz who visited hundreds of individuals in their homes and persuaded them to make donations.
3 In the introduction to the report __________ we saw how the company was set up. In the following part, its merger with Pastel Inc. will be explored.
4 Marten plc is now exporting electronic goods to Brazil and America. In __________ case, most of the sales are in Rio de Janeiro.
5 Tate Britain and Tate Modern, both located in London, were opened to the public in 1897 and 2000 __________.
Ellipsis (leaving words out) works as a cohesive device because readers can supply the missing words from the text they have just read.

Nouns accompanied by adjectives may be left out the second time they are mentioned, particularly where numbers and superlatives are used.

- There are two reasons for the original growth in cities. The first (reason) was the process of industrialization, where factories required new workers.
- A number of psychological experiments were carried out at Yale University in the 1960s. Two of the most interesting (experiments) are explored by Blass (1999), who comments on their representation in film and TV.

In formal writing, the expression do so can be used instead of repeating a verb phrase.

- Individuals may not take responsibility for recycling waste, but government agencies should do so.
- The investigating body made three requests to Vector plc to produce its accounts. When Vector finally did so, it became clear that some information was missing.

**B Identify where the writer has avoided repeating a noun by leaving it out.**

1. At the time, a government minister congratulated Unitech on the projects it had established. The most successful had succeeded in obtaining jobs for hundreds of unemployed people.
2. The first two trains of the day completed their journeys without incident, but the third was forced to stop outside London, when it was discovered that the theft of copper cables was causing signalling failures.
3. There have been many campaigns aimed at encouraging the public to eat more healthily. Some of the latest involved memorable catchphrases such as ‘your five a day’, a reference to the number of portions of fruit or vegetables people are recommended to eat.
4. With Tony Blair as their leader, the Labour Party, according to Garfield (2007), entered their third general election with a surprising lack of confidence, given their success in the previous two.

**20.5 test yourself**

A Replace repeated verb phrases in the sentences with a form of do so.

1. If a museum which was previously free decides to charge for admission, it should charge for admission in the knowledge that it is certain to receive a measure of bad publicity.
2. Hewlings Ltd agreed to improve its health and safety standards, but when inspectors arrived at its premises in April 2009, it was apparent that it had not improved its health and safety standards.
3. New traffic schemes will not solve all the problems of congestion, but they can help to solve them.
4. It is often difficult for a homeless person to secure a fixed address, but he or she will be able to apply for a job much more easily by securing a fixed address.
A Complete the text about British supermarkets, using the words and phrases in the box. Three of the words and phrases are not needed.

Overseas visitors are often astonished by a few particular aspects of British supermarkets. 1 ______ is the market penetration of the main brands. The four leading chains 2 ______ take over 80% of the money spent in the UK on groceries; 3 ______ currently at the top of the pile, Tesco, takes over 10 pence of every consumer pound. 4 ______ is the amount of packaged and prepared food sold in supermarkets. The refrigerated section of the supermarket is often 5 ______ single biggest area. A third aspect is the relative cheapness of food. 6 ______ may provoke some controversy, given the current spikes in food commodity prices.

B Complete the introduction to an essay about home-grown fruit and vegetables.

The activity of growing one’s own produce is enjoying a resurgence in popularity in cities throughout the industrialized world. The effects of 1 ______ trend have yet to be fully studied. This essay will begin 2 ______ an analysis from an economic point of view. Firstly, I will define the phenomenon, distinguishing between 3 ______ two most prominent aspects, namely allotments and edible landscaping. The 4 ______ are associated in the UK with individually held plots, whereas in the United States 5 ______ often take the form of community gardens, and 6 ______ divergence will be examined, since 7 ______ has significant implications for the economies of the households and neighbourhoods where 8 ______ allotments are situated. 9 ______ leads into a discussion of the history of urban gardening, and the financial and economic importance attached to 10 ______ activity when 11 ______ was the main method of guaranteeing purity and continuity of supply at an affordable cost. 12 ______ days are past, as 13 ______ factors are no longer relevant for most of the population, so the question now is, why the resurgence? What needs does 14 ______ activity fulfil? As mentioned 15 ______, this essay will concentrate on 16 ______ economic factors, but other motivators will be mentioned briefly.

C Put the sentences in the correct order to make a cohesive paragraph about protest groups.

a This is not a label that many of these groups use themselves.
b They are often categorized under the heading of anti-capitalism or anti-globalization.
c In the past few years, many protest movements around the world have converged, partly assisted by internet-based technologies which allow easy communication.
d Some, in fact, disavow it.
D Put the sentences in the correct order to make a cohesive paragraph about data storage. List the words and phrases used to create cohesion in the text.

a DropBox and its competitors allow digital files to be stored online.
b These are items of hardware or storage media, respectively, that individuals or organizations own and maintain themselves.
c Another feature of this method of storage is its ‘chat’ feature, which enables those working on a file simultaneously to type to each other via a sidebar.
d This method of storage has distinct advantages over storing items in folders on hard drives or discs.
e When it comes to electronic storage, one can store data in different ways.
f One can save files on an internal or external hard drive, or on a portable storage device (CD, USB stick, etc.).
g However, there is another method: in the cloud.
h Its usefulness lies in individuals being able to access and edit files from any location with internet access.

E In this overview of one researcher’s career, which would precede some extracts from her writing, add the missing words of cohesion.

Personal financial management (PFM) was a long-term interest of Korlovski. She made major contributions to the field; here we will look at three of________. First of all,________ made early contributions to the understanding of the psychology of PFM. A second strand of________ work was education, particularly getting the main concepts of PFM into the secondary school curriculum. The third aspect, a logical extension of the two________, focused on policy changes.________ three key aspects of Korlovski’s work overlapped throughout her life. The________ extracts have been chosen to show________ range of her contributions in________ areas.

F Rewrite the underlined phrases, using some of the cohesive devices in unit 20, to complete the text about the education system in Quebec.

The education system in Canada reflects Canada’s history by containing elements borrowed from the United Kingdom, France, and the United States. Canadian schools, for example, seek to ensure that all pupils possess at least a minimum oral and written competency in both French and English. In Quebec, ensuring that pupils can speak and write in English and French is achieved by mandating lessons in English and French in elementary and high school, elementary school lasting six years and high school lasting five years.

After high school, the vast majority of young Quebecois students progress to a general and vocational college called a CEGEP. In progressing to a CEGEP, young Quebecois students follow a path which is different from the path taken by their British equivalents, because students who are preparing for university and students who wish to enter the job market as eighteen-year-olds are all taught in the same building. A system where students are all taught together may, according to educational theorists, have the advantage of promoting the integration of different social classes.

G Write 150–250 words about a famous person. Use as many of the cohesive devices covered in unit 20 as possible.
Apostrophes

- with ‘s’ is used to show possession after singular nouns, and after plural nouns that do not end in ‘s’.
  Picasso’s paintings, London’s new Mayor, Keynes’s economic theories, people’s rights
- without ‘s’ is used after plural nouns that end in ‘s’.
  Teenagers’ problems, ships’ navigation systems
- is used in contracted forms.
  It’s difficult (= it is), who’s won? (= who has), you mustn’t enter (= must not)
- is not used for decades, plural numbers or plural abbreviations.
  in the 1920s, people retiring in their 50s, DVDs
- is not used for the possessive form of it.
  When Dalco plc was set up, its ambitions were modest.

Brackets

- are used around sources of information and cross-references.
  Some emotional responses appear to be innate (Eibesfeldt, 2004).
  Most of the results show a marked improvement in performance (see Appendix 1).
- are used when giving additional but not essential information.
  The term ‘Barbary’ (derived from the Berber people) was used to describe the North African coastal states of Morocco, Algeria, Tunisia, and Libya.

Capital letters

- are used for the names of people and titles; places, days, months, and festivals; organizations, brands, laws and treaties; nationalities and languages.
  after Professor Blake had spoken; Wales, Saturday, February, the New Year; the University of Warwick, Sony, the Maastricht Treaty; a Brazilian city, a Portuguese speaker
- are used for the first and main words in the titles of books, films, etc.
  A Short History of the English People; Travels with a Donkey
- are used for job and course titles, but not for types of jobs or subjects of study.
  Emily Wong was appointed Chief Accountant at Hills plc; students training to be accountants; a BSc in Computer Science; fewer students are studying physics
- are not used for seasons or for north, south, etc. unless they are part of a place name.
  in winter; to the east of the mountains; East Java
- are not used for ordinary nouns such as society, poetry, or childhood.

Colons

- are used to introduce lists and direct quotations, and to give explanations.
  Three cities were suggested to the organising committee: Bristol, Leeds and Manchester.
  As Greer (2009) points out: ‘There is insufficient data to support a change in policy’.
  Rothko’s bid ultimately failed: most board members felt that it lacked long-term potential.

Commas

- have many uses, some of which are optional. Key information is given below.
- are used in clauses with participles, and with non-defining relative clauses.
  Stevenson plc lost the contract, leading to a sharp downturn in its business.
- are used after clauses beginning with connectors such as when, although and if.
  Although the fire caused no fatalities, the damage to the factory was extensive.
- are used with connectors such as consequently, however, therefore and moreover.
  There are, however, several reasons to doubt that the latest experiment will be a success.
  Moreover, the continuing storms prevented relief workers from rescuing the villagers.
- are used to separate items in a list.
  The play completed a very successful tour of Hungary, Bulgaria (,) and Romania.
- are used, like colons, to introduce quotations.
  As Poll (2010) states, ‘The competence of the Competition Commission was questioned by MPs’.
- are used with the words and phrases of course, for example and namely.
  There were, for example, two sightings of the bird in 2011 in the Scottish Highlands.
- are used when giving additional useful information (in a similar way to brackets).
  The journalist who investigated the incident, Mike Sams, was nominated for a Pulitzer Prize.
  The oil tanker ran aground on Taransay, an island in the Hebrides.
Dashes
• are not common in academic English, but may sometimes be used instead of commas or brackets to give additional information.

Hideo Suzuki – one of Japan’s leading entrepreneurs – was Senco’s main financial backer.

Full stops
• Apart from indicating the end of a sentence, full stops are usually used in Latin abbreviations such as a.m., p.m., e.g. and i.e.
• A series of three full stops (called an ellipsis) shows that some words are missing from a quotation.

Dixon (2012) points out that ‘there is a tendency ... for price and quantity to change.’
• Full stops are not used in abbreviations such as BBC, NATO or USA, or for titles such as Dr, Mr or Ms.

Hyphens
• are used in compound adjectives, particularly when they come before nouns.

peace-keeping forces, high-tech designs, a sugar-free diet, an Anglo-American agreement
• are used after some prefixes, such as anti-, co-, counter-, e-, ex-, and self-

anti-aircraft guns, co-author, counter-productive, e-commerce, ex-employee, self-conscious
• are normally used in expressions relating to ages and dates.

a 25-year-old woman, a 300-year-old bridge, pre-1800, post-war prime ministers

Inverted commas (quotation marks)
• Inverted commas, single (’) or double (“), are used at the beginning and ending of quotations from other writers.

As Higson (2001) states, ‘The risk of injury can be reduced by the use of a safety harness.’
• Note that the writer’s words may contain another quotation; in this case, double inverted commas are used for the secondary quotation (or single commas, if double commas were used for the main quotation).

Norman points out that ‘few people nowadays accept that Fry’s “situational dialogues” can be the basis for a language learning syllabus’.
• Inverted commas are used to highlight or separate out a specific word or phrase.

The term ‘passive resistance’ is sometimes open to misinterpretation.
• Inverted commas are used for the titles of articles, book chapters, reports, etc.

Barbara Castle’s paper ‘In Place of Strife’ was an early proposal to restrict the power of trades unions.

Semi-colons
• are used to separate two sentences which are very closely linked in meaning. Note that the semi-colon in the example below could be replaced by a full stop (but not by a comma).

Most food industry workers have no form of health insurance; as a result, more than half, according to Samson (2008), continue to work when they are sick.
• are used to separate grammatically complex items in a list, where a comma would not be as clear.

For an expedition of this type, a number of pieces of equipment are required, including a high-performance satellite phone; specialist food rations that will last at least a week; emergency signalling devices; and a hospital-standard first aid pack.
GLOSSARY OF GRAMMATICAL TERMS

active voice  a verb form that describes what the subject of a sentence does: Jane Austen wrote 'Pride and Prejudice'. The passive voice uses the past participle + be to describe what happens to the subject: 'Pride and Prejudice' was written by Jane Austen.

adjective  a word that modifies or describes a noun: a recent article; this issue is complex.

adverb  a word or phrase that modifies verbs, adjectives, other adverbs, and sometimes sentences: write quickly; extremely hot; run very fast; in fact, most experts agree that there is a third possibility.

agent  in passive sentences, the agent is the person or thing that the action is done by: The building was destroyed by fire (fire = the agent).

article  a/an are the indefinite articles. The is the definite article.

auxiliary verb  a verb (be, do or have) that combines with the main verb in tenses and questions: Have you finished? Modal verbs also act as auxiliary verbs: The plan could fail.

clause  a group of words that contains a subject and a verb. Longer sentences may have two or more clauses, sometimes linked with connectors such as because. A subordinate clause is a clause that depends on a main clause for its meaning: The company was forced to close, despite winning several new contracts in its last year of business.

cohesion  the way in which parts of a text refer to other parts of a text, sometimes by using words like they, this or some.

collocation  the way in which some words work naturally together: latest figures; highly skilled; computer age.

comparative form  a form of an adjective or an adverb with -er or more used to make a comparison: longer, more effective. The superlative form is made with -est or most: longest, most effective.

compound adjective  an adjective formed from two words: a right-wing politician; a cutting-edge design.

conditional sentence  a sentence with two clauses, often linked with the word if, in which one clause describes a condition and the other a result: The town will flood (result) if the water level rises any higher (condition).

connector  (also known as conjunction, connective or linking/connecting word) a word or phrase such as because, in spite of or however that links ideas or sentences.

contracted form or contraction  a short form such as I'll, we've or couldn't.

countable noun  a noun with a plural form such as car/cars. Uncountable nouns have no plural forms, e.g. advice, music, information.

demonstrative pronoun  this, that, these or those.

determiner  a word normally used before a noun, or adjective + noun, which forms a noun phrase: the, this, some, each, his.

ellipsis  leaving words out instead of repeating them: There are a number of mountains in the Lake District; the highest (mountain) is Scafell Pike.

gerund  an -ing form of a verb used as a noun: Not all managers are good at delegating.

gradable  the words easy and small are gradable because you can say fairly easy or very small. Words such as perfect or female are normally ungradable.

inversion  a structure where a verb or part of a verb comes before its subject. Inversion occurs, for example, in questions and emphatic patterns: Is it correct? Rarely do they agree.

infinitive  the basic form of a verb: (to) write, (to) study, (to) understand.

intransitive verb  (see transitive verb)

modal verb  a verb (can, could, may, might, must, shall, should, will, or would) which modifies the meaning of a main verb. Semi-modal verbs are ought to, need, have to, have got to, had better, be supposed to, be going to, and used to.

modifier  a word or phrase which strengthens or weakens another word, such as a great deal (harder) or almost (complete).

nominalization  the process of forming nouns or noun phrases from other types of words and phrases: very carefully → with great care. People soon began to lose faith in the government. → Disillusionment with the government soon set in.
noun a word for a person or a thing: mother, president, bird, table, London, beauty, chemistry.

noun clause a subordinate clause that acts like noun: The announcement that the factory was about to close came as a surprise to most of the workers.

noun phrase a phrase based around a noun: an interesting argument; research into alcoholism; back pain.

object (see subject)

preparatory subject (also known as empty subject) the words it or there when used at the beginning of a sentence when there is no clear subject: It is often suggested that entrepreneurship skills are acquired early in life.

participle a verbal form: working, taking (present participles); worked, taken (past participles); having worked, having taken (perfect participles); Finding the winters too cold (participle clause), Keats left England for Italy.

passive voice (see active voice)

phrasal and prepositional verbs verbs that combine with a ‘particle’ (adverb or preposition): look up, check into. Phrasal verbs can separate from their particles, e.g. look a word up. Prepositional verbs cannot, e.g. check into a hotel.

pronoun a word that replaces a noun or noun phrase: she, it, them, etc.

quantifier a determiner that describes the amount of something: some, enough, all, etc.

reflexive pronoun myself, yourself, etc.

relative clause a clause that normally starts with a relative pronoun, giving extra information about a noun or noun phrase. Relative clauses can be ‘defining’ (the problem that researchers encountered) or ‘non-defining’ (Aluminium, which is a relatively soft metal, has an atomic number of 13.).

relative pronoun the words who, which, that, whose and whom when they introduce a relative clause.
The words where, when, why and what can also act as relative pronouns.

semi-modal verb (see modal verb)

state verb (also known as stative verb) a verb that describes a state or situation rather than an action, e.g. believe, like, own, contain. State verbs are not normally used in continuous verb forms.
**ACADEMIC WORD LIST (HEADWORDS)**

These are the headwords included in the Academic Word List. For more information on word families and frequency see [www.victoria.ac.nz/lals/resources/academicwordlist](http://www.victoria.ac.nz/lals/resources/academicwordlist).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>abandon</th>
<th>abstract</th>
<th>academy</th>
<th>access</th>
<th>accommodate</th>
<th>accompany</th>
<th>accumulate</th>
<th>accurate</th>
<th>achieve</th>
<th>acknowledge</th>
<th>acquire</th>
<th>adapt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>assure</td>
<td>attach</td>
<td>attitude</td>
<td>attribute</td>
<td>author</td>
<td>authority</td>
<td>automate</td>
<td>available</td>
<td>aware</td>
<td>behalf</td>
<td>benefit</td>
<td>bias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compile</td>
<td>complement</td>
<td>complex</td>
<td>component</td>
<td>compound</td>
<td>comprehensive</td>
<td>comprise</td>
<td>compute</td>
<td>conceive</td>
<td>concentrate</td>
<td>concept</td>
<td>conclude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corporate</td>
<td>correspond</td>
<td>couple</td>
<td>create</td>
<td>credit</td>
<td>criteria</td>
<td>crucial</td>
<td>culture</td>
<td>currency</td>
<td>cycle</td>
<td>data</td>
<td>debate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decade</td>
<td>decline</td>
<td>deduce</td>
<td>define</td>
<td>definite</td>
<td>demonstrate</td>
<td>denote</td>
<td>deny</td>
<td>depress</td>
<td>derive</td>
<td>design</td>
<td>despite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>design</td>
<td>device</td>
<td>devote</td>
<td>differentiate</td>
<td>dimension</td>
<td>diminish</td>
<td>discrete</td>
<td>discriminate</td>
<td>displace</td>
<td>display</td>
<td>dispose</td>
<td>distinct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distort</td>
<td>diverse</td>
<td>document</td>
<td>domain</td>
<td>domestic</td>
<td>dominate</td>
<td>draft</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Answer Key
01 Tense review

Suggested answers (page 006)

1 present perfect: to describe an activity that started in the past and has continued up until the present
2, 3, 4 past simple: to describe finished past actions or events
5 past perfect: to describe a past event that happened earlier than the one just mentioned
6, 7 present simple: to describe regular activities that still happen

test yourself

1.1
1 is looking for 6 watches
2 place 7 recognize
3 operates 8 is working
4 are establishing 9 prefer
5 notes 10 are changing

1.2
1 struck, were sleeping 4 launched
2 asked 5 were investing
3 would (or used to) 6 was making, destroyed

1.3
1 have discovered, was made
2 have been building
3 emigrated, wrote, has just been filmed
4 has had, started
5 has demonstrated
6 have moved, have arrived

1.4
1 had just left 4 had been leaking
2 had expected 5 had signed
3 had participated 6 had announced

1.5
1 is going to double 5 will
2 will be 6 will take or takes
3 was to prove (or would prove to be) 7 were about to
4 will be driving 8 is opening (or will open)

Challenge yourself

A
1 has grown (1.3) 6 fought (1.2)
2 is (1.1) 7 won (1.2)
3 (or has been) (1.3) 8 had changed (1.4)
4 began (1.2) (or changed) (1.2)
5 gained (1.2) 9 is (1.1)
6 became (1.2)

B
1 c (1.2) 3 a (1.2) 5 b (1.2)
2 d (1.2) 4 e (1.1)

C
1 b (1.2) 4 b (1.2) 7 b (1.2)
2 c (1.1) 5 d (1.4)
3 a (1.2) 6 a (1.4)

D
1 poses (or is posing) (1.1)
2 used to serve (1.2)
3 is (1.1)
4 take (1.1)
5 is needed (1.1)
6 are contributing (1.1) (or have contributed) (1.3)

E
1 which seeks to develop (1.1) (or which sought to develop) (1.2)
2 it transformed construction (1.2)
3 The pyramids of Egypt were built (1.2)
4 A corollary of this argument is that (1.1) (or a corollary of this argument would be that) (1.5)
5 it is certain to migrate to another (1.1) (or will be certain) (1.5)
6 Technology, on the other hand, has encountered (1.3)
7 these innovations have already been invented. (1.3)
8 incremental improvements will be the path of the future. (1.5) (or incremental improvements are the path of the future) (1.1)
9 we are not capable (1.1)
10 Before the wheelbarrow existed (1.2)
11 The second argument points to (1.1)
12 our future inventors may be working at (1.5)

F
1 has been (1.3)
2 to be (1.1)
3 have lived (or have been living) (1.3)
4 endured (1.2)
5 changed (1.2)
6 had become (1.4)
7 had developed (1.4)

G
1 is (1.1) 8 enables (1.1)
2 share (1.1) 9 lies (1.1)
3 shared (1.2) 10 will be (1.5)
4 have (1.1) 11 is (1.1)
5 look (1.1) 12 is (1.1)
6 suffer (1.1) 13 evolves (1.1)
7 is caused (1.1) 14 is (1.1)

H Sample answer

Oxford is well known for being a university city. Although it is a small city, the population increases during university terms and during the summer, because it is a popular tourist destination.
The university was first established in the twelfth century but has grown over the years as new colleges have been added. For example, Nuffield College was founded in 1937 by Lord Nuffield, a local businessman who made his wealth from car manufacturing. There is still a car factory in Oxford which makes the Mini. However, the city is most famous for its ‘dreaming spires’ and academic traditions, and the university will continue to be at the heart of the city for years to come.

02 Comparing and contrasting

Suggested answers (page 016)
more, than, While, freshest, as, as, biggest, unlike, in common, differ from

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the freshest items</th>
<th>(sales of) prepared meals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to cook from a recipe</td>
<td>to place a cook-chill meal in the microwave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ready-to-cook section</td>
<td>other sections/areas of the supermarket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>two countries (where home cooking seems to have retained its appeal)</td>
<td>the UK</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

test yourself

2.1 A
1 hotter, hottest
2 more complex, most complex
3 further (or farther), furthest (or farthest)
4 more helpful, most helpful
5 simpler, simplest
6 more optimistic, most optimistic
7 luckier, luckiest

2.1 B
1 later, latest
2 worse, worst
3 more realistically, most realistically
4 better, best

2.2
1 The water in Tank B is not as cloudy as the water in Tank A.
2 Howton argues that basic products are not as cheap in towns as in big cities.
3 Changes in micro-climates frequently occur too quickly (for anyone) to predict.
4 Excel plc did not return a profit last year because it did not export enough of its helicopters.
5 French is as difficult to learn as English. (or English is as difficult to learn as French.)
6 Some of the roads in this region are too dangerous (for you or anyone) to travel on.
7 It was not as complex a formula as most mathematicians had expected.
8 Campbell’s Bluebird was fast enough to break the water speed record several times.

2.3
1 Critics have complained that school exams are less difficult than they used to be.
2 The closer an institution gets to a financial crisis, the more it feels the pain. (or... the more pain it feels.)
3 Campaigners hoping for change within the country have become more and more pessimistic.
4 The Swiss wind turbines have worked less efficiently than the Italian ones.
5 The heavier the particles are, the easier they become to observe.
6 Introverts absorb information less quickly than extroverts, according to research.

2.4 A
1 the easiest of the many routes
2 the furthest city on the planet
3 the best film of the decade
4 (the) most efficiently
5 the most socially responsible companies in Canada
6 the least effective of all leadership styles
7 the most carefully planned expedition
8 the highest climbing snakes in North America

2.4 B
1 oldest
2 lightest
3 least
4 Japan
5 just
6 the, most, of
7 the wettest, in
8 the second most, on

2.5
1 22%
2 considerably
3 almost
4 not nearly
5 just
6 one of
7 twice
8 approximately

2.6
1 similar
2 that
3 like
4 as
5 similarities
6 similarly
7 same
8 in

2.7
Sentences 1, 4, 7 and 8 are correct.
2 ... differs from the humid interior ...
3 On the contrary, he argues, ...
5 A significant political difference between the USA and the UK ...
6 in contrast or on the other hand, others argue for ...
Challenge yourself

A
1. the most up-to-date (2.4)
2. higher (2.1)
3. faster (2.1)
4. more integrated (2.1)
5. more profitable (2.1)
6. happier (2.1)
7. more comfortable (2.1)
8. less problematic (2.1)
9. the lowest (2.4)
10. the best (2.4)

B
Sentences 3, 5, 7, and 10 are correct.
1. the greatest show on earth (2.4)
2. in the world (2.4)
3. than athletes (2.3)
4. differ from (2.7)
5. on the other hand (2.7), as high profile (2.2)
6. easy enough (2.2)
7. its worst (2.1)
8. not enough (2.2)
9. as before, a product as it was (2.2)
10. the sooner, the better (2.3)

C
1. its worst (2.1)
2. by far the longest (2.5)
3. More and more (2.3)
4. oldest (2.1)
5. highest (2.1)
6. stronger (2.1)
7. the strongest (2.4)
8. In contrast to (2.7)
9. Like (2.6)
10. The highest (2.4)

D
1. one of (2.5)
2. easily, by far (2.5)
3. Likewise, Similarly (2.6)
4. many (2.5)
5. controversial enough (2.2)
6. a product as before, a product as it was (2.2)
7. On the contrary (2.7)
8. most (2.4)
9. dissimilar (2.7)
10. from (2.7)

E
1. easier (2.5)
2. older (2.3)
3. more (2.3)
4. unlike (2.7)
5. exactly (2.6)
6. much (2.5)
7. quickly (2.5)
8. younger (2.3)
9. quite (2.7)
10. from (2.7)
11. better (2.3)
12. nearly (2.5)
13. before (2.5)
14. more (2.3)
15. more (2.3)
16. longer (2.3)
17. easily (2.5)
18. best (2.4)

F
1. in common with many (2.6)
2. similar to other (2.6)
3. the same as hundreds (2.6)
4. The most noticeable (2.4)
5. to the most junior (2.4)
6. more efficient than it was (2.3)
7. use less space (2.3) (or to use space better) (2.1)
8. work more effectively (2.1)
9. in contrast to the (or in contrast with) (2.7)
10. of the biggest (2.4)

G
1. have much in common (2.6)
2. there are obvious similarities between (2.6)
3. there is one significant difference (2.7)
4. London is the UK’s most populous city (2.1)
5. although the situation is not exactly alike (2.1)
6. a striking similarity in (2.6)

H
1. is strong enough to draw in (2.2)
2. it could have been realized more successfully (2.1)
3. was too cautious to do justice to its theme (or was too cautious and did not do justice to its theme) (2.2)
4. technology at the time of the source film was not as advanced as it is today (or technology was not as advanced at the time of the source film as it is today) (2.3)
5. the new version is similar to the original film (2.6)

I Sample answers
1. It is normally cheaper to study in a local college, particularly if it is located in a student’s home town. Capital cities tend to be the most expensive places in the country. On the other hand, the right type of education is an investment in one’s future, and it may therefore be worthwhile taking out a loan to fund the additional expenses that studying in the capital would incur.

Another important consideration is the length of time the degree would take. Sometimes local colleges make it easier to study part-time, so although it would take longer, a student studying locally might be able to work at the same time as completing the qualification. A university in the capital city may not be as flexible.

The most important thing, however, is the qualification itself. There is no doubt that the best paid jobs go to graduates from the most prestigious institutions. Unless the local college can indicate that its degree will carry the same weight as the one offered in the capital city, this might be the deciding factor.
2 A tourist researching a short cycling holiday in England needs to consider several factors. Norfolk is the flattest county, so it is ideal for beginners, in contrast to Yorkshire, which is hilly enough to satisfy the more experienced. The weather is also important. Some foreign visitors hold the view that the English climate is always cold and wet. On the contrary, nothing could be further from the truth: in summertime, Norfolk may suffer from drought. Yorkshire tends to be wetter year-round. The tourism market is more developed in Yorkshire, where their bed and breakfast establishments are used to catering to hungry cyclists. The breakfasts tend to be bigger in northern counties.

03 Noun phrases

Suggested answers (page 028)

1 The underlined words and phrases modify or change the noun, making its meaning more precise and giving more information about it.

2 Metaphorical and economic are adjectives; globalized is a past participle; resource and production are nouns.

test yourself

3.1 Sentences 2, 5 and 6 are correct.

1 ... in the a research project ...
3 A Good advice ... (or A piece of good advice ... or Some good advice)
4 ... in 1993. A The factory ...
7 ... in the hospital ...
8 ... across the Thames ...

3.2
1 little/no 4 Both/Each 7 both
2 enough 5 some 8 all
3 Any 6 either

3.3
1 and private 5 -divided
2 -renowned 6 -distance
3 -fitting 7 -up
4 and secondary 8 -boosting

3.4
1 cash 5 European 7 Water
2 Law and Union 8 arts research
3 Protest member 6 family

3.5
1 on (or the less formal about) 5 for
2 to 6 to/towards
3 into 7 of
4 of 8 in

3.6
1 proposition 4 view
2 rule 5 news
3 conclusion 6 assumption

Challenge yourself

A
1 child (3.4) 6 recent (3.3)
2 long-term (3.3) 7 three-year (3.3)
3 humanitarian (3.3) 8 demobilized (3.3)
4 government (3.4) 9 vocational (3.3)
5 completion (3.4) 10 financial (3.3)

B
1 b (3.6) 3 f (3.6) 5 c (3.6)
2 e (3.6) 4 a (3.6) 6 d (3.6)

C
1 any well-run (3.2) 6 well-maintained (3.3)
2 obvious (3.3) 7 virtually (3.3)
3 Paper (3.4) 8 very little (3.2)
4 comprehensive (3.3) 9 storage (3.4)
5 considerable (3.3) 10 of obsolescence (3.5)

D
1 regional arts funding (3.3, 3.4), government grants (3.4)
2 summer riots (3.4)
3 long-held beliefs (3.3)
4 Press freedom (3.4)
5 recently-broadcast documentary (3.3), care home residents (3.4)
6 Bribery allegations (3.4), oil-trading companies (3.3)
7 fuel tankers (3.4), fire safety test (3.4)
8 Broken-down trucks (3.3)
9 Plastic products (3.4)
10 life-expectancy statistics (3.4)

E
1 f the collapse of the housing market (3.4, 3.5)
2 a the piercing of the banking bubble (3.4, 3.5)

The answers to 1 and 2 are interchangeable.

3 g Some of these failing banks (3.2, 3.3)
4 e This use of public funds (3.3, 3.5)
5 b a higher level of public scrutiny (3.1, 3.3, 3.5)
6 c which were much higher than the average (3.3, 3.4)
7 d Protests at all levels of society (3.2, 3.5)

F Sample answer

The founder of Apple, Steve Jobs, was one of the most influential entrepreneurs of recent history. As long ago as 1990, he recognized the importance of the personal computer as the communication device of the future. He was a very talented engineer, of course, but more than that, he attracted to himself and to his groundbreaking company some of the world’s most talented hardware and software engineers. He was above all a leader: where he went, others followed.
Apple made its name selling relatively high cost products, but it maintained customer satisfaction by paying attention to the user experience. Jobs was passionate about this. He was at the forefront of three related revolutions: the re-conception of computers (previously perceived as boring business machines) as devices of playfulness and creativity; the integration of digital music - and, later, videos - into everyday life; and smartphones. Unsurprisingly, demand for the products that Apple produced grew year on year while Jobs was in control.

04 Being formal and informal

Suggested answers (page 038)
The first text might be from a popular magazine, or it could even be the transcript of an introduction to a TV or radio programme. The second sounds as if it is a piece of academic writing, perhaps from a student on a human resources course. These are the main differences:

1. The first text uses you to address the reader directly. The second has a more impersonal style, using the third person, e.g. Many young people...
2. The first text uses informal language e.g. guy, gal, a lot of, look (each other) over, while the second uses more formal vocabulary, such as embark (rather than start); assess (rather than look over); offer a contract of employment instead of hire; and probationary basis rather than trial period.

In the informal first text, the writer also uses contractions (e.g. you’re, they’re, it’s) and direct questions, one with a question tag (isn’t it?), which a formal writer tends to avoid.

3. Much of the second text is based around nouns rather than verbs, which is characteristic of formal English; the main concern is used, for example, rather than You’re probably worried..., and makes a decision instead of they decide.

4. The second text takes a more cautious approach, using expressions such as In most cases (rather than of course) and usually.

Test yourself

4.1
1 communication 4 prediction
2 preservation, development 5 stability/stabilization, elimination
3 relevance

4.2
1 There 3 It 5 There
2 It 4 There 6 It

4.3
1 We 3 I would 5 I understand
2 one is 4 We have 6 agree

4.4
1 deteriorated 5 occasions, negotiations
2 occupation 6 accelerated
3 administered 7 catalogued
4 advisable 8 unacceptable

4.5
1 is little 5 primarily/principally/predominantly
2 virtually/practically 6 are no
3 vice versa
4 status quo

Challenge yourself

A
1 set out (4.4) 8 were exposed to (4.4)
2 to examine (4.4) 9 a strong correlation
3 optimum (4.4) 10 growth rates (4.1)
4 growing conditions (4.1) 11 in the range of (4.5)
5 with regard to (4.4) 12 showed less influence
6 two separate variables (4.1) 13 no matter what (4.5)
7 namely (4.4) 14 the same growth (4.1)

B Sample answer

Demonstrating the link between the burning of fossil fuels and the world’s increasingly erratic weather patterns is not always straightforward. Expert opinion holds that the former is a primary cause of the latter. The science, however, depends on the accurate measurement and complex analysis of data. Mistakes can be made in the conduct of these studies, and there are scientists who dissent from the majority opinion, despite the mounting evidence.

C
1 b (4.1) 4 c (4.1) 7 c (4.1)
2 a 5 c (4.1) 8 b (4.1)
3 b (4.1) 6 a (4.4)

D
1 b There...many interpretations (4.2)
2 a The disproportionate youthfulness (4.1), demographics (4.4)
3 a The confusion (4.1), the conflation (4.1)
4 b Not only...but also (4.5)

E Sample answer

The transportation system of greater London has always balanced private and public initiatives. The movement of millions of commuters from the hinterland into the metropolis, and the related travel between the concentric rings of central, inner and outer London, are worthy of extensive study. Although precise measurement is beyond the scope of this evaluation, it is clear that many of these journeys are by private vehicle: mainly cars, but to a lesser extent motorcycles, scooters, and bicycles; and likewise
many are by public systems of transport: notably the Underground, better known as the Tube, the overground trains, and the bus system. (The Thames riverbus, while formally a part of London Transport, forms such a negligible fraction of commuter transit that it can safely be left out of the equation.)

This essay will examine the changing patterns of use of these private and public systems over the past twenty years. There is no doubt, for instance, that the introduction of the congestion charge – a tax on cars and vans entering a specified zone of central London – has had a significant effect on traffic patterns. It remains a question for further study, however, whether the initial decline in vehicle movements has been compensated for in other ways.

05 Relative clauses

Suggested answers (page 046)
a Clause 1 is essential to the meaning of the first part of the sentence; clause 2 contains useful additional information, but the sentence would remain meaningful without it.
b The relative pronouns in clauses 1, 3 and 4 could all be replaced by that. The meaning wouldn’t change, but in 3 and 4, the use of that would make the style slightly less formal.
c Which could be left out. Neither the meaning nor the style would change.

test yourself

5.1
1 Some doubts were raised about the quality of the questionnaire which/that the group used in the research.
2 The shoe company which/that made the largest profits was based in Dundee.
3 The folding bicycle which/that/- they designed at their workshop in York is selling very well.
4 Hewitt questioned the experience of the software engineers who/that Wentworth plc recruited.
5 The director who pioneered the tracking shot later wrote a memoir.
6 The region is crossed by two main roads which/that require substantial repairs.

5.2
1 In a case of gross misconduct, which includes theft, an employer may fire an employee immediately.
2 Bill Grayson handed his small pharmaceutical business to his daughter, who transformed it into a multinational corporation.
3 Turkey has land borders with eight countries, which has frequently led to a kind of diplomatic balancing act.

4 Vegetable oils, which are traded as commodities, have seen recent volatility in their spot price.
5 Barbara Hepworth, who critics regarded as a key Modernist sculptor, created Single Form for the United Nations building in New York.

5.3
1 whom
2 whose
3 -
4 of which
5 who (or whom)
6 to whom

5.4 A
1 in which
2 neither of which
3 with whom
4 at which
5 from whose
6 three of which

5.4 B
1 A jury may have to listen to several expert witnesses, some of whom may seem to contradict each other.
2 The oil leak may destroy the local fish stocks on which the coastal villages depend.
3 The newspaper chain was inherited by Forster’s daughter, one of whose first actions was to sell two of the titles.
4 Several of the paintings were owned by Massine, with whom Picasso collaborated in a number of projects.
5 The Pianura Padana is the plain in northern Italy through which the river Po flows to the Adriatic sea.
6 The fear is that thousands of local people will begin to move out of the area, in which case refugee camps will need to be established.

5.5 A
1 where
2 why
3 where/when
4 what
5 when
6 why

5.5 B
1 when
2 why
3 where
4 when/where
5 when
6 why

5.6
1 arising
2 given
3 used
4 based
5 consisting
6 caused

Challenge yourself

A
1 e (5.2)
2 b (5.1)
3 j (5.1)
4 h (5.4)
5 i (5.5)
6 c (5.1)
7 a (5.6)
8 g (5.2)
9 d (5.1)
10 f (5.5)
Actuarial skills are useful in many areas, which means that someone who holds them is rarely unemployed. It is also a well-paid profession. However, anyone considering it should bear in mind that the initial training is rigorous and long. Trainee actuaries usually seek employment with large companies which offer to support their professional development. Typically, junior actuaries stay with this firm until they are fully qualified, which may take some years, depending on which specialism they choose.

**06 Stating facts and opinions**

Suggested answers [page 054]

**Facts:**
1. The number of adoptions in England and Wales has fallen by 4.1% in the past two years.
2. In the same period, the number of couples applying to adopt has risen.
3. The number of UK adoptions from developing countries has risen.

**Opinions:**
1. The process of adopting in the UK currently presents an unreasonable barrier.
2. Changes in the way that UK adoption agencies operate are overdue.

**test yourself**

**6.1**
1. Fresh, demonstrates/demonstrated
2. issued, statistics
3. evaluated, empirical
4. attacked, flimsy
5. relevant, emerged
6. leaked, vital

**6.2**
1. by 11% 5. in births
2. of 22%. 6. risen rapidly
3. highest level 7. remained constant at
4. from the pie chart 8. tripled between

**6.3**
1. According to Escher, it should be possible
2. Stevens has pointed out that Mexican politics
3. As Nikura maintains, some species of insect
4. Bostock’s view is that crime statistics
5. In Metstrom’s opinion, corporate lawsuits

**6.4**
1. concerned 4. may
2. agree 5. believe
3. seems 6. indicates
Challenge yourself

A

1. Spot prices for metals remained stable in this period despite the turbulence in the oil and textile markets. (6.2)
2. There was an increase of 14% in the number of visitors at the Sizewell education centre in the period 2007-9. (6.2)
3. It seems plausible that modern medicine will continue to extend human life. (6.4)
4. The sales totals for fine art at the auction house reached a twenty-year peak in 2009. (6.2)
5. House prices fell slightly in Cumbria in the first half of 2012. (6.2)
6. ‘You may have a point, but I disagree with your order of priority.’ (6.4)
7. Payday loan companies reported that demand for their services trebled during the Christmas period in 2012. (6.2)
8. There was a steep rise in the number of complaints to the BBC over offensive language throughout the 1990s. (6.2)

B

1. obvious (6.4)
2. collected (or collated) (6.1)
3. valuable (6.1)
4. absolutely (6.4)
5. interesting (6.1)
6. examine (6.1)
7. compiling or comparing (6.1)
8. indicates (6.1/6.4)
9. longest (6.2)
10. information (6.1)
11. by (6.2)
12. of (6.2)
13. sharp (6.2)
14. fall (6.2)
15. may/might (6.4)
16. agree (6.4)
17. more (6.2)
18. explain (6.1)
19. what (6.4)
20. absorb (6.1)
21. right (6.4)
22. support (6.1)

C

1. Companies that withhold information ... (6.1)
2. ... does not support the conclusions ... (6.1)
3. ... argues that there is no hard evidence ... (6.1)
4. Timely information ... (6.1)
5. ... should produce statistics ... (6.1)
6. ... revealed some disturbing facts ... (6.1)
7. The preliminary data ... (6.1)
8. The facts did not emerge ... (6.1)
9. There was extensive evidence ... (6.1)
10. ... did not allow them to retrieve data ... (6.1)

D

1. observes (6.3)
2. accurate (6.1)
3. gradual (6.2)
4. seen (6.2)
5. gathered (6.1)
6. show (6.1)
7. twice as (6.2)
8. suggests (6.3)
9. opinion is (6.3)

E

Graph A: sample answer
The statistics show that the number of one-person households in the UK almost doubled between 1971 and 2001, reaching a final figure of 50% of all households. Between 1971 and 1991, there was a steady increase in the number of such households, but, as can be seen from the graph, the peak was reached in 1991, and the figure then remained stable for the last decade of the thirty-year period. It seems likely that rising divorce rates and the trend for later marriage could explain these figures. Another possible explanation could be an overall increase in the number of older people, some of whom will inevitably have found themselves living alone in the last period of their lives.

Graph B: sample answer
We can see from the graph that there were three times as many households with more than five people resident in 1971 as in 2001. The figure of 9% of UK households with this number of residents dropped gradually to 7% in 1981, and then more steeply to 3% in 1991, where it stabilized until 2001. The evidence suggests that couples in the UK were choosing to have fewer children in this period. The greater availability of means of contraception may have played a part in this trend. It also seems plausible that, as a result of changing UK life and work patterns, more elderly parents were looked after in care homes rather than as part of extended families.

The period from 1971 to 2001: sample answer
The data in these two graphs indicates that the period from 1971 to 1991 was one of significant change within UK society. Most people, looking at the figures, would agree that by 2001 the position of the traditional family unit had been noticeably weakened by new social pressures.

07 Connectors

Suggested answers (page 062)
1. Adding information: not only..., but also..., as well as
2. Expressing reason and result: due to, because of
3. Expressing time: first, then, as

test yourself

7.1 A
1. a result
2. to
3. because
4. therefore/consequently
5. because/as/since
6. the fact
7.1 B
1 The pressure of water was so great that the dam broke.
2 The nuclear facility was damaged by the tsunami and for this reason the local area had to be evacuated. (or The nuclear facility was damaged by the tsunami; for this reason the local area had to be evacuated.)
3 Most of the bridges in the region have such a strong structure that they can survive serious earthquakes.
4 Since the business had made a late surge in sales, the redundancy programme was cancelled.
5 Her first novel was such a success (or such a successful one) that she immediately gave up her job.
6 There were so many complaints that the company withdrew the product.

7.2
1 labelled so that
2 in order to communicate
3 call to let
4 In order to demonstrate
5 in order for mechanics
6 so as not to disturb

7.3
1 Although
2 however
3 Despite
4 though
5 whereas
6 in spite of

7.4 A
1 until
2 finish
3 has received
4 Meanwhile,
5 eventually
6 is

7.4 B
1 First
2 Then/Next
3 After
4 same
5 Then/Next
6 Lastly

7.5
1 As well as losing the Battle of Naseby, Charles I was also forced to give up his crown.
2 The company was declared bankrupt. Moreover, the CEO was imprisoned for fraud.
3 Not only did Edison patent many new inventions, (but) he also developed systems for the mass distribution of electricity.
4 In addition to its main site in the UK, the University of Nottingham has campuses in Semenyih, Malaysia and in Ningbo, China.
5 Not only will the centre's research increase our understanding of the brain, (but) it may also help to fight diseases such as cerebral palsy.
6 The National Theatre's production of Hamlet ran for two years in the West End. What is more, it toured in India, Australia and Canada, winning several awards.

7.6
1 Needing to regain California, the Democrats launched a series of aggressive TV ads.
2 Before beginning his expeditions, Amundsen always made meticulous preparations.
3 Refused access to the nuclear facility, Hans Blix and his team had to return to their hotel.
4 Having worked through the night, Professor Ancram was able to announce her results before the midday deadline.
5 After exploiting (or Having exploited) known reserves around the world, oil companies began to look to the Arctic for new sources of petroleum.
6 The bridge rises automatically on the approach of tall ships, allowing them to pass safely through.

7.7
1 such as
2 i.e.
3 For example

Challenge yourself
A
1 that is to say (or in other words) (7.7)
2 namely (7.7)
3 subsequently (7.4)
4 in other words (or that is to say) (7.7)
5 but (7.3)
6 Since (7.1)
7 consequently (7.1)
8 In brief (7.7)

B
Phrases 1, 4, 7, 8, and 10 are correct.
2 e.g. (7.7)
5 At the same time (7.4)
3 As (7.4)
6 By (or In) (7.4)
4 such as (7.7)

C
1 c (7.4)
2 b (7.4)
3 a (7.4)
4 d (7.4)

D
1 e (7.4)
2 f (7.4)
3 d (7.5)
4 b (7.5)
5 a (7.1)

E
1 as well as → so that (7.1)
2 and → but (7.3)
3 whereas → therefore (7.1)
4 however → but (7.3)

F
1 c (7.7)
2 d (7.3)
3 a (7.4)
4 a (7.4)
5 b (7.7)
2 6 a (7.5)
11 d (7.4)
12 c (7.4)
13 b (7.3)
14 b (7.3)
15 d (7.7)
Sample answer

I am going to talk about my last school because it's the organization I know best. To give you a general impression of the school I'm going to use three words: friendly, active, and inspiring. Even though it's a big school, all the teachers know the students' names and whenever there's something to celebrate, the whole school always joins in. As well as this, the teachers encourage the students to work hard. Having got the best exam results in the city last year, the teachers were very proud and they showed this by giving out awards and prizes, for example.

Being emphatic

Suggested answers [page 074]

1 For the first time in history, more people live in cities than in the country. In fact, this has been true of industrialized countries for a century at least. Now it is also true for the rest of the world. As these conurbations grow ever larger, it is vital that their transport infrastructures keep pace. What we see too often these days are cities grinding to a halt under the pressure of traffic jams. Only by stepping back and taking a fresh approach to our transport systems will we be able to ensure that the places where most of us now live can actually function.

2 These changes all emphasize parts of the text.

Challenge yourself

A

1 it is the ash from a volcano, rather than the heat and fire, that often causes more damage to human life. (8.1)
2 no sooner had the residents of St Pierre emerged from their houses, believing they were safe, than they were enveloped in a cloud of poisonous ash, resulting in 29,000 fatalities. (8.2)
3 What she focuses on is the fine ash that is drawn up into the atmosphere, (8.1)
4 Only by decreasing power can a pilot hope to limit the risk; (8.2)
5 what they had to do was (to) close the airspace over much of Europe (8.1)
6 it is our health and safety culture that makes us overreact in situations such as these. (8.1)

B

1 certain (8.4) 5 crucial (8.4)
2 particularly (8.3) 6 quite (8.3)
3 obvious (8.4) 7 clearly (8.3)
4 Indeed, (8.3) 8 even (8.3)

C

1 What she discovered was a pattern of behaviour (8.1)
2 Rarely are qualifications required (8.2)
3 Not until they have spent at least six months in these positions do they make their first attempt to act as doctors. (8.2)
4 However, it is the behaviour of members of the public and senior staff towards these impostors that is the most interesting aspect (8.1).
5 There can be no doubt that (or There is no doubt that) (8.4).
6 At no time during his two-year period as a hospital doctor was he asked (8.2).

D
1 undoubtedly (8.3)
2 essentially (8.3)
3 absolutely, quite (8.3)
4 in fact (8.3)
5 invariably (8.3)
6 wholly, utterly (8.3)
7 inevitable (8.4)
8 actually (8.3)

E Sample answer
On no account should the electric car be dismissed as the vehicle of the future. Despite its low sales, it can be argued that the long-term case for an alternative to the internal combustion engine remains entirely convincing. Petrol prices are indisputably rising year on year, and it is clear to most observers that the need to reduce greenhouse gas emissions is still a global priority.

What the government should do, as environmentalists point out, is offer greater incentives to the potential buyers of electric cars. Without doubt, this must include an increase in the number of recharging points throughout the country, further subsidies on price at the point of purchase, and greater support for the research that is certain to result in cheaper battery technology. Only by taking these measures can the government play its part in creating a system of sustainable private transport.

09 Passives
Suggested answers [page 082]
1 The Chrysler Building is currently the third tallest skyscraper in New York City. It was designed in Art Deco style by William Van Alen, and work was started in September 1928. The tower was completed less than two years later, after nearly four million bricks had been laid manually. In 2007, it was ranked ninth on the ‘List of America’s Favorite Architecture’ by the American Institute of Architects.
2 By using the passive voice, the writer is able to keep the building – the main topic – as the subject of the sentences, and also to leave out the unimportant agents building contractors and bricklayers.

test yourself
9.1
1 A new device for measuring the purity of water was launched at a conference in Manchester last year.
2 Most of the spare parts for the car are made abroad.
1 Simple changes can be made by local communities to aid biodiversity, according to Shalmi (2012).

2 Most people would prefer to be consulted before a flight path is permanently re-routed over the area where they live.

3 Middleton (2011) argues that more than 100,000 deaths per year in the UK could be prevented by better quality healthcare.

4 Holstein (2009) describes being questioned for three hours in a threatening manner at Los Angeles International Airport.

5 BAA is piloting a system that will allow hand luggage to be examined more efficiently.

6 If an accident victim is unconscious, his or her breathing should be checked regularly.

---

9.5

1 It has been estimated that the cost of repairing the fire damage to the port will be £60m.

2 Oil companies are reported to be exploring parts of Antarctica.

3 Athens in Ancient Greece is believed to be (or believed to have been) the site of the first democracy.

4 Juan Olmo, who died in 2009, is thought to have been Europe’s most skilful brain surgeon.

5 It was claimed that the drug had been tested on soldiers without their knowledge.

6 Passengers on the new jet are said to experience a slight feeling of weightlessness.

---

Challenge yourself

A

1 have been hunted (9.3)

2 was joined (9.3)

3 was generated (or was being generated) (9.3)

4 was imposed (9.3)

5 is justified (or has been justified) (9.3)

6 are consumed (9.3)

B

1 are diagnosed as (or have been diagnosed as) (9.3, 9.6)

2 are associated with (or have been associated with) (9.3, 9.6)

3 be classified as (9.6)

4 are entitled to (9.6)

5 to be admitted to (9.1)

6 (to be) confined to (9.6)

7 to be located at (9.6)

---

C

1 h (9.2) 4 j 7 f (9.6) 10 g (9.1)

2 d (9.6) 5 a (9.4) 8 c (9.3)

3 i (9.5) 6 b (9.6) 9 e (9.1)

D

Verb forms 2 and 8 are correct.

1 is growing (or grows) (9.3)

2 might be expected (9.4)

3 was conducted (9.3)

4 are increasing (9.3)

5 are expected (9.3)

6 are entitled to (9.6)

7 to be located at (9.6)

---

E

1 Environmental legislation has been passed (9.3)

2 environmental legislation as being imposed on them (9.4)

3 know what is expected of them (9.2)

4 Member states are obliged to pursue this (9.3)

5 business having its factory insulated (9.5)

F

1 is caused by mining (9.3, 9.6)

2 has been extracted (9.3)

3 will be abandoned (or is abandoned) (9.3)

4 are perceived to be avoiding paying (9.5)

5 were bailed out by the state (9.3, 9.6)

6 continue to be felt (9.4)

7 is borne by the poor (9.3, 9.6)

8 will be targeted (9.3)

---

G Sentences 2 and G are correct.

1 has been called (9.3)

2 are packed (9.3)

3 It was described (9.3)

4 were awarded (9.3)

5 were already made (9.3)

6 are currently being invested (9.3)

7 will have been fulfilled (9.3)

---

H Sample answer

Fire evacuation procedure

Make sure that you are aware of the location of the fire exits. If there is a fire anywhere in the building, the fire alarm will be set off. When you hear the alarm, make your way immediately to the nearest fire exit. The lifts should not be used. Fire doors will be automatically unlocked. The rallying point is situated in the front car park. Please ensure that access gates for emergency vehicles are not blocked. When the fire has been dealt with, you will be informed when you can re-enter the building. Do not go back into the building until the ‘all-clear’ has been given. An analysis of the event will be undertaken by the building supervisor and circulated for information.
10 Arguing and persuading

Suggested answers (page 092)
1 The five phrases are: It seems obvious that;
As Seiber argues; According to Norman and
Martinsen; While it is clear that; it might be
argued.
2 In the first text, the writer uses the view of another
writer to support her own; in the second, she
introduces another view as a counter-argument to
her own, and comments on it.

Test yourself

10.1
1 of all 5 on to 8 for the
2 will 6 Lastly 9 refer
3 identify 7 conclude
4 Next with

10.2
1 must, because 4 can, argue
2 However 5 defend
3 If 6 Although

10.3
1 ... a case in point is tobacco, ...
2 ... this is exemplified in planning law.
3 There is no doubt that, ...
4 ... prison is its deterrent effect ...
5 ... to be considered is that ...

10.4
1 pointed 4 Although/While
2 According 5 cause (or produce)
3 however 6 less

10.5
1 drawback 4 second, of
2 favour 5 advantage
3 serious, to

10.6
1 It follows that ...
2 ... it can be concluded that ...
3 In conclusion, ...
4 ...is therefore recommended.
5 ... it would be advisable to ...
6 ... it may be said that ...

Challenge yourself

A
1 introduces (10.1) 5 argued (10.4)
2 considers (10.1) 6 Firstly (10.1)
3 examine (10.1) 7 Next (10.1)
4 describe (10.1) 8 Lastly (10.1)

B
1 b, 5th sentence (10.3) 4 a, 3rd sentence (10.3)
2 f, 4th sentence (10.3) 5 d, 6th sentence (10.3)
3 e, 2nd sentence (10.3) 6 c, 1st sentence (10.3)

C
1 Although there are many benefits to owning a car
(10.4)
2 I will evaluate both of these (10.1)
3 are beyond the scope of this essay (10.1)
4 Instead, it will focus on the environmental
consequences (10.1)
5 I will argue that it is vital for (10.2)

D
1 exemplifies (10.3)
2 will argue (10.2)
3 On the other hand (2.7)
4 contention (10.2)
5 Studies have shown (10.3)
6 It therefore follows (10.6)
7 In summary (10.6)
8 To conclude (10.6)
9 will consider (10.1)
10 For the purposes of this discussion (10.1)
11 will begin (10.1)
12 then move on (10.1)

E Sample answers
1 This essay will examine the necessity for the media
to come under tighter legislative control. For the
purposes of this essay, I will restrict my enquiry to
newspapers, not broadcasters. I will argue that the
most recent scandals, of political interference in
suppressing major stories of public interest, prove
that the industry's system of self-regulation has
failed. Despite years of warnings, and more than one
cycle of reforms, this system is manifestly not fit for
purpose. My contention is that the only practical
alternative is a clear set of laws, setting out what is
and what is not permitted in relationships between
journalists on the one hand and politicians, civil
servants, and the police on the other. It is obvious
that more transparency is needed, in order to
rebuild public trust in these essential institutions.

2 It is vital that healthcare be provided by the state,
because a publicly-operated system will work to
the benefit of the whole country. First of all, I will
look at the impact of comprehensive healthcare on
the working population. Once it becomes a right
of citizenship rather than being tied, as now, to
employment, it lessens the burden on employers,
as well as freeing employees to move around the
labour market more efficiently. Secondly, although
it has long been recognized that workers are
entering the labour force later, not enough thought
has gone into the ramifications of this extended adolescence on the healthcare system. Virtually all developed countries provide healthcare to children, independent of parents’ means; the proposed system would ensure that young adults continuing their education are not forgotten by the system. Finally, and arguably most importantly, public health emergencies can best be taken care of within a holistic system of public healthcare: epidemic and highly contagious diseases can be contained most effectively when the treatment of individuals is not less important than the treatment of the population as a whole. It follows that there is an urgent need for healthcare provision to be understood as a national, public responsibility. It is beyond the scope of this essay to consider which of the various economic models is best suited to our needs, but it is clear that we need to agree quickly on a system of basic healthcare provision.

11 Modal verbs
Suggested answers (page 100)
should consider, will fall, will flow, can bring,
1 must 2 can 3 should 4 will

11.1 test yourself
Sentences 3, 4 and 8 are correct.
1 ... rescue ships were able to remove/managed to remove/succeeded in removing ...
2 The government could have bailed out ...
5 No one has ever been able to prove ...
6 ... from IBM Zurich were able to produce/managed to produce/succeeded in producing ...
7 ... be shared out ...

11.2 might be 3 could soon 5 may explain
2 may focus 4 might have 6 could not

11.3 1 could not 4 had to stop
2 must 5 do not have to 3 ought 6 should

11.4 1 needed/had
2 does not need to (in written English needn’t is not appropriate)
3 need not have gone
4 must/need to
5 needn’t/don’t need to (in spoken English both are possible)
6 did not need to build

11.5 1 would 3 will 5 would
2 would 4 will 6 will

11.6 1 Shall I start ...
2 I could contact ...
3 ... society has got to
4 ... we’d better look ...
5 ... supposed to include ...
6 Would it be possible for ...
7 ... were supposed to be ...
8 Could we present ...

Challenge yourself
A
1 The science of logistics can be illustrated (or We can illustrate the science of logistics) (11.1)
2 Anyone planning a serious expedition needs to be aware (11.4)
3 Modern climbers can use (11.1)
4 had to do (11.3)
5 ought to serve (11.3)
6 Nile Brangwen and his team need not have failed (11.4)
7 the two lead climbers could have waited (11.1)
8 managed to descend (11.1)
9 they must have regretted (11.3)

B
1 should (11.3)
2 might (11.2)
3 will be able/could (11.1)
4 could (11.1)
5 should (11.3)
6 will (11.5)

C
1 needs to (11.4)/should (11.3)
2 may (11.2)
3 could/might (11.2)
4 would (11.5)
5 will (11.5)
6 must (11.3)
7 could soon 5 may explain

D
1 senior staff ought to have been aware (11.3)
2 FoodExpress could not have predicted (11.2)
3 conflict would lead (11.5); the charity managed to withdraw (or succeeded in withdrawing or was able to withdraw) (11.1)
4 FoodExpress cannot be blamed (11.1); it could be argued (11.2)
5 they ought not to overlook (11.3); can be satisfied (11.1)
6 that could/might/may not have been achieved (11.2)
Aberdeen could not have become the prosperous city it is today without the discovery of North Sea oil in the 1970s. Like other towns and cities that depended on shipbuilding, fishing and other failing industries such as paper-making, Aberdeen might have declined quite rapidly in the latter part of the 20th century; instead, it would become what is known as a ‘boom’ town, benefiting from high levels of employment, a skilled workforce and two well-regarded universities.

Even if, as predicted, oil supplies finally begin to decline, modern industries in which the city has taken an interest, such as renewable energy projects, will be stimulated by a ‘technology transfer’ from the oil industry. Recently named one of the five cities that could lead the UK out of recession, Aberdeen should remain an economic success story for many years to come.

**Challenge yourself**

1. If a new training course is evaluated continuously, the organizers are able to measure its success in detail. (12.4)
2. One consequence of war and the resulting political turmoil is an acute shortage of food. (12.5)
3. Stein (2007) argues that the lack of print archives in modern governmental department offices has resulted in a kind of institutional memory loss. (12.1) (or Stein (2007) argues that a kind of institutional memory loss results from the lack of print archives in modern governmental department offices.) (12.2)
4. A surge southwards of economic migrants from the (former) communist state would be triggered by the reunification of the two Koreas, according to Masefield (2010). (12.2)
5. One factor that contributed to the successful conclusion of the deal was the hiring of professional negotiators. (12.5)
6. A dioxin spill further up the river led to high fish mortality. (12.1)
7. One outcome of the experiment with advertising methods was a noticeable change in the demographics of Centra’s customers. (12.5)
8. Medium-term economic growth may stem from tax cuts, in the view of Conway (2009). (12.2)

1. ... made on account of the fact that ...
2. ... because of a lack ...
3. If an employee ...
4. ... as a result of ...
5. ... California because/as they ...
6. Due to a lack ...

**Talking about cause and effect**

Suggested answers [page 108]
The essay questions all require a discussion of causes and effects. Question 2 focuses on effects and question 3 on causes.

**test yourself**

**12.1**
1. led to
2. produce
3. resulting in, creating
4. bring about
5. causing, to return
6. responsible for

**12.2**
1. be produced by
2. result from
3. is caused by (or can be caused by)
4. stem from
5. be triggered by
6. is brought about by (or can be brought about by)

**12.3**
1. such
2. therefore/
3. consequently
4. meant/means
5. as
6. so

**12.4**
1. ... because of a lack ...
2. ... made on account of the fact that ...
3. If an employee ...
C

1 One probable result of the pollution generated by road vehicles is (or will be) a rising level of childhood asthma. (12.5)

2 Very little rain fell in the early part of the year, which explains why the government banned people from using domestic hosepipes. (12.3) (or The fact that very little rain fell in the early part of the year explains why the government banned people from using domestic hosepipes.) (12.4)

3 Since some new urban roads are built without pavements, pedestrians are unable to reach their destinations. (12.3)

4 The disparate attitudes of the American people may be caused by the huge size of the United States. (12.2) (or The huge size of the United States may have caused the disparate attitudes of the American people.) (12.1)

5 There has been such public anger over tax avoidance schemes that parliament has tightened the appropriate financial regulations. (12.3)

6 As a consequence of overspending its budget, the marketing department was forced to make three account managers redundant. (12.4)

7 Under-regulation allowed some banks to make risky loans, producing uncertainty in the financial markets when the loans were not repaid, and finally causing an economic collapse. (12.1)

8 Charities may suffer during a recession due to the fact that people have less disposable income. (12.4)

D Sample answer

The 1990s are regularly described as ‘the lost decade’ in Japan. In the late 1980s, falls in real estate value and bad bank loans brought about a rapid drop in prices, leading to a period of economic stagnation. Continuing deflation caused the government to reduce interest rates to zero in the early 1990s. This policy did not, however, produce a revival in the country’s economic fortunes, which continued to decline throughout the decade. Moreover, signs of improvement in the Japanese economy towards the end of the 1990s were short-lived as a result of the global slowdown in the closing year of the millennium.

E Sample answer

Violent shivering, caused by the body’s need to produce heat, is one of the first probable effects of hypothermia. Mild confusion may follow as a consequence of a decrease in blood pressure and heart rate. Lips, ears, fingers, and toes may then become blue, resulting from the body’s attempt to draw warm blood back towards the vital organs. Next, as an inevitable outcome of the closing down of the body’s metabolic systems, victims will find it almost impossible to walk or use their hands.

F Sample answer

The high-street fashion chain Farflung went into liquidation last year, as a result of difficulties that had been predicted by business analysts for the preceding two years. Its downfall began, arguably, with its policy of continual special offers, which meant that shoppers expected a bargain every time they visited. This unrealistic goal was the main reason for Farflung’s need to cut its profit margins.

In addition, the chain ran into difficulties with its suppliers, who were also feeling the effects of the recession. In July, the central bank devalued the currency, causing Farflung to change its payment terms. This resulted in its fulfilment houses becoming financially unstable. For many of them, their line of credit could not cope with the new terms of business, and, as a consequence, they cancelled their contracts. Thus, Farflung found itself without sufficient stock, and under pressure from investors.

The final disaster occurred when its CEO’s emails were leaked to the press, which gave rise to much criticism from financial analysts, fashion experts, and the public, as the amount of mismanagement came to light.

13 Verb patterns

Suggested answers [page 116]

Verb + infinitive: start, enable
Verb + infinitive without ‘to’: can, may
Verb + -ing form: enjoy, justify
Verb + that: argue, contend
Verb + wh-: ask, explain

test yourself

13.1

1 taking 5 doing/to do
2 to discourage 6 to win
3 to divide/dividing 7 to hesitate/hesitating
4 seeing 8 lowering

13.2

1 reminded 3 refused 5 invited
2 managed 4 agreed 6 helped

13.3

1 made 3 will 5 let
2 would 4 watch 6 must

13.4

1 ... carries on making ...
2 Zantec plc delayed launching ...
3 ... anticipate losing money ...
4 ... acknowledge not having ...
5 ... risk being overtaken ...
6 ... proposed offering research ...

204 Answer key
13.5
1 when 5 that 9 how
2 that 6 that 10 that
3 whether 7 who 4 what
4 what 8 why

Challenge yourself

A
1 setting up (13.4) 7 to allow (13.2)
2 spending (13.4) 8 establishing (13.4)
3 to make (13.2) 9 looking (13.4)
4 to suggest (13.2) 10 to acquire (13.2)
5 making (13.4) 11 expanding (13.4)
6 to open (13.2)

B
1 persuade (13.2) 5 spending (13.1)
2 operate (13.3) 6 would rather (13.3)
3 to turn (13.2) 7 confirms (13.5)
4 suspected (13.5)

C
1 enable consumers to post reviews (13.2)
2 means accepting (15.1)
3 contends that this phenomenon produces (13.5),
   appears to spend (13.2)
4 explain what (13.5)
5 goes on to discuss (13.1), threatened to take (13.2)

D
1 which (13.5) 7 watch (13.3)
2 expect (13.2) 8 rather (13.3)
3 let (13.3) 9 enjoy (13.3, 13.4)
4 accept (13.5) 10 better (13.3)
5 why (13.5) 11 when (13.5)
6 might (13.3)

E
1 how/that (13.5) 6 to allow (13.2)
2 why (13.5) 7 that (13.5)
3 to suspend (13.2) 8 that (13.5)
4 to build/building (13.1) 9 what (13.5)
5 had (13.5) 10 that/how (13.5)

F Sample answer

Martha Stewart began developing her business skills
by opening a catering business in the basement of her
house in Connecticut. She went on quickly to become
the manager of a gourmet store, where her experience
enabled her to produce the first of a series of cookery
and lifestyle books in 1982. By the end of that
decade she realized that she had achieved the kind of
reputation that would allow her to move into magazine
publishing and the making of TV programmes.

Everything appeared to change in 2003 when Stewart
was accused of securities fraud over a stock sale.
After denying that she had acted illegally, Stewart
was brought to trial and ultimately imprisoned for

six months. On release she described how she had
occupied herself in jail by acting as a liaison assistant
between the prison authorities and her fellow inmates.

Commentators who predicted that her career was
finished were proved wrong over the next five years as
she continued to produce books, to appear regularly
on TV, and even to launch new lines in furniture,
homeware and wine.

14 Hedging

Suggested answers [page 124]
The underlined words and phrases all make the text
more cautious or tentative. The writer uses them
because he or she is making an argument, rather than
simply presenting facts, and wants to avoid making
claims that appear too strong.

test yourself

14.1
1 It has been estimated that 25% of homeless adults
   suffer from some form of mental illness.
2 The practice of short selling contributed to the
collapse of Lehman Brothers.
3 Drought appears to be the major problem in some
   parts of Sub-Saharan Africa.
4 Wasps with a greater number of black spots on
   their heads tend to be more aggressive, according
to research.
5 The report indicates that in some parts of the
country bipolar disorder is being overdiagnosed.
6 It looks as if/though smaller electronics companies
   are doing better than their larger rivals.

14.2
1 slightly 6 supposedly
2 necessarily 7 typically, usually
3 quite 8 rather
4 relatively/reportedly 9 approximately
5 normally 10 sometimes

14.3 A
1 The latest research appears to indicate ...
2 Most people would say that ...
3 It is possible to argue that ...
4 Statistics have demonstrated that ...
5 It has been suggested that ...
6 It would seem that ...

14.3 B
Sentences 4 and 5 are correct.
1 fair to conclude
2 the evidence would
3 been argued that
6 It is widely (or It has been widely)
14.4  These new studies into brain function can help us to understand cases of slow development in some children.
2 It is possible that high-speed rail travel in Europe will take more market share from short-haul flights.
3 Scientists may have found a way of changing the immune system to prevent food allergies.
4 Medical research is unlikely to determine (or It is unlikely that medical research will determine) the cause of autism.
5 There will probably be a worldwide shortage of rare earth metals in the near future.
6 Sparks from electric power lines are likely to have caused (or It is likely that sparks caused) some of the forest fires in the region.
7 Space debris could damage key communications satellites.
8 The amount of cybercrime in the USA and Europe should decrease as security software improves.
9 Recent government campaigns are unlikely to have had any long-lasting impact on levels of adult obesity.
10 The latest fall in unemployment might improve consumer confidence in the economy.
11 A horse that is deprived of sensory stimulation will possibly stop eating.
12 Changes in the chemical composition of the material could have occurred as a result of careless handling in the laboratory.

14.5  
1 The new antibiotic has in principle ... 2 ... has improved to the extent that ... 3 The new CEO Jackie Dell has in one sense ... 4 There are on balance ... 5 The advertising campaign worked in the sense that ... 6 The new law will to some extent ...

Challenge yourself

A  
1 can be difficult to obtain (14.4)  
2 the latest research appears to show (14.1)  
3 It is estimated that the figure now stands at approximately 4,500. (Or The figure is estimated to stand at approximately 4,500.) (14.1, 14.2)  
4 The recession is likely to be responsible (or It is likely that the recession is responsible) (14.4)  
5 Unemployment may cause relationships to break down (14.4)  
6 economic stress has a tendency to increase levels of alcohol abuse (or there is a tendency for economic stress to increase levels of alcohol abuse) (14.1)

B  
1 arguably (14.2) 5 balance (14.5)  
2 reasonably (14.2) 6 extent (14.5)  
3 typically (14.2) 7 rule (14.5)  
4 widely (14.3) 8 respects (14.5)

C  
1 Most/Many people (would) agree that economic sanctions against a country are preferable to war. (14.3)  
2 it can be argued/it is argued/it has been argued that a properly calibrated system of sanctions should normally be implemented (14.2, 14.3)  
3 the evidence suggests/indicates that the situation on the ground, where sanctions are actually experienced, is rather more complicated. (Or the evidence from/provided by the situation on the ground,...) (14.2, 14.3)  
4 tend to unify the people affected (14.1)  
5 and thus help to strengthen the regime in power. (14.1)  
6 It seems as if this was the case (14.1)  
7 sanctions are only effective insofar as the blame for their effects (14.5)

D Sample answers

No changes are necessary to sentences 3 and 7.  
1 According to Harper and Maxwell (2009), approximately one-third of Londoners believe that ... (14.2)  
2 It has been suggested that support for Scottish home rule will increase, the longer a referendum on independence is delayed. (14.3)  
4 It is relatively unusual for salts to melt at low temperatures. (14.2)  
5 As a rule, the supply of new money, known as quantitative easing, stimulates medium-term growth in the economy. (14.5)  
6 New insights into the causes of dementia should emerge from a doubling of government research funding. (14.4)  
8 There appears to be an increase in the level of crime in poorly-maintained city centres. (14.1)

E Sample answer

Obesity, the medical condition where an excess of body fat may cause (14.4) an adverse effect on health, is now the focus of a great deal of media attention. This interest is perhaps explained (14.4) by research that appears to show (14.1) that the incidence of obesity in higher income countries is now rising at its fastest
ever rate. Stories in the press, however, are likely to be accompanied by photographs designed to shock rather than by statistics designed to educate. The pictures that draw attention are typically those of children, and the background narrative tends to concentrate on the diet of junk food that younger people seem to enjoy. If space allows, there may also be a reference to a lack of exercise, often with a graphic example, such as the children who are driven to schools that appear to be within easy walking distance of their homes. It is possible to argue, however, that the overall result of this kind of coverage is a distortion rather than a clarification of the problem.

15 Phrasal and prepositional verbs

Suggested answers (page 132)

wipe out, rely on (object: particular species), carry out (object: certain functions), die out, carry on, adapt to (object: another language)

**test yourself**

15.1

1 finish 5 bail 9 pick
2 draw 6 take 10 laid
3 take 7 strike 10 laid
4 set 8 make

15.2

1 slowed/went 4 speak 7 eat
2 take 5 carry/go 8 ring
3 bounced 6 dying

15.3

1 on 4 with 7 from
2 with 5 for 8 to
3 of 6 for

15.4

1 looked, pointed 4 engaging
2 suffering 5 qualify/apply
3 go, led

15.5

1 comparing, with 4 explain, to
2 invested, in 5 Protecting (or To protect), from
3 blamed for

15.6

1 face up to 4 get out of
2 come up against 5 running out of
3 cut back on 6 come up with

15.7

1 be regarded as 4 is based on
2 be prejudiced against 5 is associated with
3 be required for

**Challenge yourself**

A

1 to (15.5) 9 on (15.1)
2 back (15.2) 10 on (15.4)
3 into (15.7) 11 out (15.1) (or to (15.4)
4 out (15.1) or up (15.1))
5 in (15.2) 12 to (15.3)
6 at (15.7) 13 with (or on) (15.6)
7 about (15.3) 14 of (15.3)
8 out (15.1)

B

1 about (15.3)
2 as (15.7)
3 Drawing (15.3)
4 set (15.2)
5 up (15.1)
6 objecting (15.4)
7 known (15.7)

C

1 accounted (15.3) 4 points/prompted (15.1)
2 defined (15.7) 5 provided (15.5)
3 transformed (15.3) 6 vote (15.4)

D

1 taken off (15.2)
2 based on (15.7)
3 go along with (15.6)
4 sets out (15.1)
5 set up (15.1)
6 hand out (or over) (15.1)
7 put off (15.1)
8 prejudiced against (15.7)
9 ends up (15.2)
10 cut back (15.6)

E

1 consists of (15.3)
2 carried (15.1)
3 agree (15.3)
4 concentrate on (15.3)
5 came (or comes) (15.3)
6 used (15.7)
7 added (15.3)
8 differ from (15.3)
9 specialized (15.4)
10 protected (15.5)

F Sample answer

The first step is to check out the local area, find out what kind of restaurants already exist, and work out if there is a gap in the market. The time that a potential restaurateur invests in research is unlikely to be wasted. Once the new owner has decided on the type of restaurant, the next step is to hire the right kind of head chef. Taking on a chef with vision and drive may
prove to be the key to success. It is also important to remember that, as well as being able to cook, a chef needs to be able to deal with staff and local suppliers. With a head chef appointed, the next task is to weigh up the options for the menu. Key advice in this area is not to offer too many dishes. Long menus are likely to lead to waste.

Instead the focus should be on a short list of high-quality local produce, with the flexibility to try out one or two new dishes every month. The final quality that the new restaurateur is required to possess is patience: new businesses start slowly and it may take months to build up a regular clientele.

16 Paraphrasing

Suggested answers (page 142)
1 techniques
2 with the characteristics we want to see
3 for thousands of years
4 (which ...) was the way in which agriculture developed
5 last
6 scientists created more efficient techniques
7 The latest (form of)

Selective breeding, radiation, genetic modification and genetic engineering are repeated because these are the technical terms in general use.

test yourself

16.1
1 criticizes
2 identified
3 demonstrate
4 states
5 characterizes
6 argued

16.2
1 High speed trains; economy
2 The Asian tiger; on safari; traditional medicine; skin
3 share price; January; financial year
4 copyright; the music industry (but you could say, for example, ‘the music business’)
5 water meters; the consumer (but you could say, for example, ‘ customers’ or ‘householders’)
6 school governor; a member of the public (but you could say, for example, ‘a member of the community’); school

16.3
1 visible/discernible
2 produce/publish
3 climax/main feature/high point
4 temporarily/briefly
5 worry/anxiety/stress
6 invariably/habitually
7 praised/flattered
8 indifferent/uninterested/lukewarm/half-hearted/disappointing

16.4
1 There is no direct link between a CEO’s remuneration (or the remuneration a CEO receives) and the success of a company.
2 The mineral wealth of the Ural mountains has fundamentally affected the region’s history.
3 South Korea is able economically (or is economically able) to buy its way out of any regional recession.
4 Students benefit from having undergraduates and postgraduates studying some of the same courses.
5 Self-adjustment by markets (or Market self-adjustment) can bring inflation under control.
6 Self-publishing ventures are often successful because of the power of the internet.
7 The rise of national pride in post-colonial countries is ultimately positive.
8 It is essential for the sole trader to thoroughly investigate the different ways to collect payment.

16.5
1 The effects of the very long-term use of computer games have yet to be studied by psychologists.
2 Economists tend not to be (or do not tend to be) as optimistic as politicians.
3 Subsidized house insulation schemes are likely to become more popular as energy prices rise.
4 Although they have many advantages, lithium-ion batteries have some drawbacks.
5 Before writing her first novel, Agatha Christie worked as a First World War nurse.
6 Cancer can result from long-term exposure to radiation.
7 It is possible that data loss will occur while the virus is being eliminated.
8 Temperatures rose so high in Kansas in July 2010 that more than 2,000 cattle died.

16.6
1 designing a building
2 is now an important element
3 the plans must
4 To meet this requirement
5 by taking into account how
6 the effect of the structure
7 natural or built
8 the architect has to assess

Challenge yourself

A Sample answers [16.1–16.6]
1. If, at a small cost per citizen, the public provided funds for political parties, no one could accuse the government of changing their policies to suit large private donors, according to Smith (2010).
Sutcliffe (2011) argues that the BBC relies too much on costume drama in its effort to gain viewers at peak times.

Alberge (2010) maintains that private and public arts funding in the UK focuses too much on London, which means that the rest of the country does not normally get the support that it needs.

It makes no sense, according to Gardner (2011), for parents to borrow much more than they can afford to buy a house close to a top-performing primary school.

Hamilton (2009) suggests that critics have paid less attention to the British painter Keith Vaughan because, unlike other artists of his time, he portrays people rather than abstract forms.

G Prosser (2011) suggests that poor advice is more likely to make a new business fail than a shortage of money.

As Asher (2006) indicates, there are still claims that Shakespeare did not write the plays that appear under his name. Despite this, no one has been able to provide convincing proof to support any other writer and the basis for these claims seems to be the rather weak assumption that his literary genius could not have originated from such an ordinary background. In fact, as Asher concludes, the documents that exist, such as official records and statements from people living at the time, indicate with the same force as for other writers of the age that Shakespeare was the author.

There are more productive ways of raising the level of fresh fish that the public can buy than by farming salmon, as Nye (2006) demonstrates. It is essential first of all to understand that the salmon requires other fish as part of its substantial diet. In fact, a farmed salmon eats more fish than it produces. Furthermore, the use of a vegetable protein as a substitute food lowers the quantity of important omega-3 fatty acids. The second point is that disease and sea lice can pass from farmed salmon to wild salmon in the area through the open-net procedures required by farming (ibid.).

May (2010) warns that there are three disadvantages to the method known as ‘kettling’, where the police hold protesters inside a restricted area for a period of time. First, law-abiding citizens with no connection to the protest may be detained. Next, the members of the public who are affected may be unable to access food, water, or toilets; and finally, as May points out, the possibility of a breakdown in order may in fact be increased by the conditions created by the ‘kettle’. As the intentions behind the garden city remain unrealized in their original form, there is no way, according to Patel (2008), of measuring how successful the project might have been. Sir Ebenezer Howard, who began the campaign for garden cities, envisaged towns that would be planned within detailed guidelines, which included maximum populations of 32,000 covering areas of 6,000 acres. Being dependent, however, on the financial backers of First Garden City Ltd, he could not afford to employ the kind of architects who might implement his plans, as Patel explains.

Martoff (2007) contends that the arguments made in support of gated communities do not stand up to criticism. In claiming that it is possible to reduce the risk of crime by keeping non-residents out, defenders of these communities fail to understand that these outsiders are unlikely to be criminal, and that by having people passing by, illegal acts may be discouraged. As Martoff explains, statistics from the USA show that there is as much crime in gated communities as there is in similar unsecured areas.

According to Weaver (2009), Margaret Thatcher’s experiences as a child in Lincolnshire can explain the thinking behind the policies she implemented in the 1980s. As a grocer’s daughter, she wanted to ensure a balanced national budget; the Methodist faith of her family resulted in her belief that people, in place of the government, are responsible for their own destiny, and, in the same way, her father’s time as a prominent local politician gave her a belief in public service, as Weaver suggests.

Students’ answers

17 Conditionals

Suggested answers (page 152)
1 c 2 a 3 d 4 b

test yourself

17.1
1 Local authorities are fined if they do not ...
2 If you translate poetry into another language, you lose ...
3 Phosphorus burns if you expose it to air.
4 Some travel companies ... if you pay online.
5 If they overtrain, athletes ...
6 Transport costs are reduced if most produce sold is grown locally.

17.2 A
1 If you do not give people ...
2 ... if banks do not perform ...
3 If you ask managers ...
4 ... if you do not evaluate ...
5 ... if the two sides enter into dialogue ...
If Eatwell had focused on their long-term strategy, rather than their day-to-day concerns, they might have turned their business around some time ago. Although senior staff undoubtedly worked hard and obtained some new contracts, the company's goal was unclear. If they had decided, for example, that they were going to concentrate on the catering needs of art galleries and museums, they could have built up a good level of return business in that sector.

Their new sales director needs to supply that kind of vision. If he or she lets the business community know what Eatwell stands for, the company may lose some contracts in the short term, but they will be able to find their place in the market. Brand identity is the key element. Eatwell would be in a stronger position today if they had spent more time developing this aspect of their business.
18.1
1 A virus is a program
2 Perishables are food products
3 A parasite is an organism
4 The summer solstice is the day of the year
5 A carcinogen is a substance
6 An injunction is a court order

18.2
Sentences 2 and 5 are correct.
1 ... the system by which/whereby money is moved ...
   (or for moving money)
3 ... an instrument for screening ...
4 a method by which/whereby goods ...
6 ... for breaking up and smoothing the soil.

18.3
1 literacy is defined as
2 The term ‘stainless steel’ describes an alloy
3 disease is known as a pathogen
4 ‘People power’ could be defined as the force
5 The word ‘ethics’ refers to the moral principles
6 The term ‘climate change’ designates statistical alterations

18.4
1 coined
2 is an example
3 are four main types
4 was first recognized, observed
5 can be exemplified

Challenge yourself

A
1 is (18.1) 5 means (18.3)
2 which (18.1) 6 which (18.1)
3 describes (18.3) 7 refer (18.3)
4 coined (18.4) 8 Examples (18.4)

B
1 The term ‘domestic violence’ may be defined as a pattern of (18.3)
2 It can take many forms, such as (18.4)
3 It is defined more narrowly by the Oxford Dictionary of Law as (18.5)
4 it can also mean (18.3)
5 All of these types of violence can be expressed in various ways (18.4)
6 Verbal abuse is a form of abusive behaviour which (18.1)

C
Phrases 1, 7, 8, and 10 are correct.
2 was coined (18.4) 5 whereby (18.2)
3 was exemplified by (18.4) 6 does not refer to (18.3)
4 for delivering (18.2) 9 refers to (18.5)

D
1 b referring to (18.3) 7 b refers to taking (18.3)
2 d mean by (18.3) 8 d known as (18.3)
3 c to describe (18.3) 9 c means (18.3)
4 d which (18.1) 10 a called (18.3)

19 Collocation

Suggested answers [page 166]
1 government officials, Travel disruptions
2 latest figures, significant reduction, economic hardship
3 establish conclusively

E Sample answers
A wolf is a large canine animal which is the top predator in many temperate and arctic ecosystems. It is well known to have interacted with humans since prehistoric times, when we began to domesticate it and turn it into the dog. The wolf features in folktales and mythology in many cultures, and its image has changed significantly over the past half-century. It is not an endangered species, although many areas in which it was once widespread, such as Western Europe, are now devoid of wolves.

Tobacco is a word used for both a plant and the product of that plant. It is grown as a cash crop around the world, and is an important element of the economies of countries from southern Africa to China. Most tobacco is smoked as cigarettes; other forms of human consumption include cigars and snuff. In addition, tobacco can be used for completely different purposes; for instance, it has long served as a pesticide. It is highly addictive and is a leading cause of mortality globally.

President’s Day is celebrated on the first Monday in June. It became a national holiday in Freelandia in 1972, on the twentieth anniversary of independence. It was intended to commemorate our first president, Dr Miriam Hakim, who had died in the previous year. President’s Day quickly became a time to celebrate other events and characters in our nation’s story, and in particular the struggle for independence. It is marked by parades, picnics, political speeches, and fireworks.

Marketing is the branch of business which deals with the customer’s needs. It is allied with, but not synonymous to, the function of sales. Marketing exists to find out what the customer wants or needs, in some cases before they are even aware of it themselves, and to fulfil that need by ensuring that relevant goods or services are commissioned and produced.
There are major concerns about the state of the National Health Service in the UK. Experts from the health industry regularly point up the inconsistencies in the quality of treatment across the country; commentators write convincingly of the growing financial burden on hospitals as the population ages; health workers complain that NHS reforms are politically motivated and do not serve the interests of local people.

At the same time, however, there is a widespread belief amongst the public that the NHS, as it currently operates, is one of the UK's major post-war achievements, and a desire that it should remain in its current publicly financed form. The age of the family doctor may have passed, but local communities still have faith in the clinic or health centre in the part of town where they live.

20 Cohesion

Suggested answers [page 172)

A
1. Luxembourg
2. Bolivia
3. Luxembourg and Bolivia
4. the fact that Luxembourg and Bolivia are landlocked
5. the history of Luxembourg and Bolivia
6. in the rest of the essay

B
1. this trend needs to be examined in the overall context of the current economic situation.
2. Mitchell (2009) argues, however, that this was not always how these two species behaved in the wild.
3. These measures are likely to result in greater hardship for the general population.
4. This was confirmed in a recent study by Stevens and Black (2011), who examined...
5. A series of articles published in 2010 first made this disagreement public.

C
1. other
2. many
3. the
4. same
5. both

D
1. business community (19.4)
2. specific context (19.1)
3. recently published (19.2)
4. economic conditions (19.1)
5. market forces (19.4)
6. inevitably result (19.3)
7. local authorities (19.1)
8. respond positively (19.3)
9. social networks (19.1)
10. significant reduction (19.1)
G Sample answer
Mohandas Karamchand Gandhi was born in India in 1869. He was known by several names, such as Mahatma and Bapu, meaning 'Great Soul' and 'Father' respectively. He started work as a lawyer in South Africa after training for this profession in London, and he campaigned for civil rights for Indians living in that country. He believed firmly in ideas of peace and freedom and these ideas became more and more important to him.

When Gandhi returned to India in 1915 he was already a well-known Indian Nationalist. At that time India was ruled by the British and Gandhi fought against them by using a policy of non-cooperation. He also organized protests. Both led him to be imprisoned on several occasions. Such experiences only made him more determined.

After independence from Britain, India was troubled by conflict between Hindus and Muslims. Gandhi was assassinated in 1948 by a Hindu extremist who thought he was too sympathetic to Indians of the other religion.
INDEX

A
a/an, indefinite article 29, 161

as pre-modifying words 28
of size and impact 167
superlative 17, 19
advantage, collocations and synonyms 96
advantages and disadvantages, expressing 96
adverb + adjective combinations 31, 167
adverb synonyms 145
adverbs
adding own specific meaning 167
comparing 16-20
describing trends 56
emphatic 77-8
strengthening meaning of adjectives 167
using for hedging 126
advice, giving 105
after + -ing form of verb 147
afterwards, sequencing events 66
agent of passives, avoidance of 83
agree, reporting verb 143
agree with/to 135
agreeing, in speaking 59
albeit, formal word 43
alike, expressing similarity 21
all + countable/uncountable nouns 30
almost as + adjective 20
almost the same as, expressing similarity 21
almost the + superlative adjective 20
also, expressing additional information 67
although, expressing contrast 64, 147
analysis verbs, stating scope of essay 93
another/other, cohesion 175
any + countable/uncountable nouns 30
apart, phrasal verb particle 133
appear, hedging verb 125
apply for/to 136
argue, reporting verb 143
argue about/with 136
arguing 92-7
arguments, words and phrases 94
articles 29
as pre-modifying words 28
SEE ALSO a/an, the
as, connector 63, 110
as + adjective/adverb + as 17, 20, 57
as a consequence of, connector 111
as (name) + reporting verb 58
as a result, expressing result 63, 110
as a result of, connector 111, 147
as a rule, hedging expression 129
as soon as, expressing time 65
as we have seen
cohesion 176
conclusion phrase 97
as well as, expressing additional information 67
as ... as, expressing comparison 147
assert, reporting verb 143
associated with 87
at first and first/ly 66
at last and last/ly 66
at no time, emphatic inversion 76-7
at which point, at start of relative clause 49
at work/university, article omitted 29
attributed to, passive with preposition 87

B
based on, passive with preposition 87
be, used in nominalized sentences 39
be + relative clause, defining language 161
be able to 101
be about to, immediate future 11
be defined as 162
be going to see going to
be known as 162
be likely/unlikely to 11
expressing probability in
hedging 128, 154
be on the point of, immediate future 11
be supposed to 105
be to 11
be well advised 168
because (of), expressing reasons
63, 111, 147
before + -ing form of verb 147
believe
reporting verb 143
state verb 7
belong, state verb 7
below, cohesion 176
between
difference 22
similarity 21
beyond the scope of, focusing
language 93
blame, reporting verb 143
both
+ countable nouns 30
brackets for short definitions 161
but, expressing contrast 64
by 0.2%, facts and figures language
57
by, introducing agent in passive
sentence 87
by + -ing form of verb 93
by car/train, article omitted 29
by far the + superlative adjective 20
by which, following a class noun in
definitions 161
C
can
ability 101
does 105
does change to be able to 147
expressing possibility in hedging 128
offers 105
permission and requests 105
suggestions 105
categorically, emphatic adverb 77
cause and effect 108-13, 147
certain to, expressing probability 11
characterize, reporting verb 143
charts 56
claim, reporting verb 143
class, defining language 161
classified as, passive with
preposition 87
classify, reporting verb 143
clearly, emphatic adverb 78
clichés, hedging expressions 129
cohesion 172-7
collocation 166-9
collocations
adjective + noun 167
advantage 96
adverb + adjective 167-8
analyse 168
badly 168
benefit 96
business 169
carry out 168
demonstrate 168
deny 168
disadvantage 96
discuss 168
drawback 96
economic 167
effect 112
establish 168
examine 168
factor 112
family 169
financial 167
government 167
health 169
identify 168
immediate future 11
important 167
local 167
major 167
market 169
need 97
noun + noun 169
objection 96
outcome 112
political 167
raise 168
reason 112
refer to 168
relevant 167
research 169
resolve 168
respond to 168
result 112
result in 168
significant 167
social 167
source 112
specific 167
study 168
suppress 169
this/these 174
verb + adjective 168-9
verb + noun 168-9
well 168
widespread 167
write 169
colloquialisms, avoidance of 41
comparatives, double 18
comparing and contrasting 16-23,
96, 147
comparisons, evaluating counter­
arguments 96
completely, emphatic adverb 77
comparative adjective/adverb +
than 18
comparative adjectives and adverbs
17, 18, 20
comparatives, double 18
comparative adjective/adverb +
than 18
comparative adjectives and adverbs
17, 18, 20
comparatives, double 18
comparing and contrasting 16-23,
96, 147
comparisons, evaluating counter­
arguments 96
completely, emphatic adverb 77

Index

events
describing in present continuous tense 7
in the past 8, 10
reasons for 63
eventually, expressing time 66, 109
every + countable nouns 30
every four years, frequency 30
evidence, collocations 55
exactly the same as, expressing similarity 21
every + countable nouns 30
every four years, frequency 30
everything, expressing time 66, 109
examples
extending definitions 163
giving 68
expect + future tense 11
expect to be met, passive infinitive 85
explain, reporting verb 143
explanations, giving 68
extra information, expressing 67

F
fact(s), collocations 55
facts and figures
discussing 56-7
making comparisons 57
factual statements, to begin arguments 94
for + comparative adjective + than 20
faster and faster, intensifying adjective 18
feel, followed by infinitive without to 119
few, cohesion 175
few + countable nouns 30
finally, sequencing 66, 93
first conditionals 153-5
focusing language 93
for, following particular nouns 33
for + -ing form of verb, following a class noun in definitions 162
• for all practical purposes, hedging expression 129
• for example, presenting arguments 95
for instance/example, giving examples 68
for the purposes of, focusing language 93
for this reason, expressing reasons 63
forget, different meanings 117
formal English 38-43
former, cohesion 176
from, following different/differ 22
future in the past 104
future perfect tense 11, 84
future tense 6, 10-11, 84, 104
• stating scope of essay 93

G
gerographical names, articles 29
gerunds, passive 85
give rise to 109
go on, different meanings 117
going to 10
• in first conditional sentences 155
• future tense 10, 84
• gradable/ungradable adjectives 126
• graphs 56

H
habitual actions in past 104
had, third conditional sentences 157
had better 105
• followed by infinitive without to 119
had hoped to be given, passive infinitive 85
hardly ... when, emphatic inversion 76
have got to 105
have to 102-3
hear, followed by infinitive without to 119
hear about/from 136
hedging
• adverbs 126
• cause and effect 108
• expressions 129
• techniques 124-9
• verbs 125
help, hedging verb 125
history references, extending definitions 163
hope + future tense 11
how, clauses beginning with 120-1
however 65, 147
I
I, appropriate use in writing/presentation 40-1
identify, reporting verb 143
if, to express cause and effect 111
if it were not for 156
impersonal statements 40
impersonal style, passive sentence structure 86
in
• following particular nouns 33
• following superlative adjectives 19
• similarity 21
in a/one sense, hedging expression 129
in addition to 67
in brief, giving a summary 69
in common, expressing similarity 21
in conclusion, conclusion phrase 69, 93, 97
in contrast (to/with) 23
in the event that, first conditional sentences 155
in excess of, formal language 43
in fact, emphatic adverb 77
in the following example, cohesion 176
in the meantime, expressing time 66
in order (not) to + infinitive 64
in other words, rephrasing 68
in particular, emphatic adverb 77
in the preceding paragraph, cohesion 176
in principle, hedging expression 129
in some/many respects, hedging expression 129
in spite of, expressing contrast 65
in some/many respects, hedging expression 129
in spite of, expressing contrast 65
in summary, conclusion phrase 97
in which case, at start of relative clause 49
indeed, emphatic adverb 77
indefinite article 29, 161
indicate
hedging verb 125
reporting verb 143
indisputably, emphatic adverb 78
inevitably, cause and effect 109
infinitive
continuous 86
passive 85
past 86
with to 116-18
without to 119
informal English 38, 41, 48, 63
modal verbs 102-5
omission of that in verb + that clauses 121
so 110
information, collocations 55
insist, reporting verb 143
interested/interesting 31
into, following particular nouns 33
intransitive phrasal verbs 134-5
invariably, emphatic adverb 78
inversions, emphatic 76-7
it + be, impersonal phrase 40
it + modal verb, impersonal phrase 40
it can be concluded that 97
it could/might be argued that 102
it has been said that 86
it is believed that 86
it is estimated 86
it is obvious that 94
it is possible to argue that 127
it is therefore recommended that 97
it seems clear that 94
it seems/looks/appears as if 125
it was understood that 86
it would be advisable 97
its and it's 173
itself, to emphasize a noun 75
J
just, with present perfect tense 9
just as + adjective 20
K
know, state verb 7
L
Latin phrases in formal English 43
latter, cohesion 176
lead to 109
leaving words out in essay writing 177
let, followed by infinitive without to 119
like 22
state verb 7
likely see be likely to
likewise, expressing similarity 22
limiting adjectives 167
limiting words and phrases 76
linking words see connectors
little + uncountable nouns 30
located at/in/on, passive with preposition 87
logical necessity 103
look, hedging verb 125
M
maintain, reporting verb 143
make, followed by infinitive without to 119
managed to + infinitive 101
many, cohesion 175
many + countable nouns 30
many of + relative pronoun 48
marginally + comparative adjective + than 20
matter, state verb 7
may
change to be possible 147
expressing possibility in hedging 128, 154
may (not), possibility 102
mean
different meanings 117
state verb 7
meanwhile 66
might
change to be possible 147
expressing possibility in hedging 128, 154
second conditionals 155
might (not), possibility 102
miles on hour, use of indefinite article 29
modal verbs 100-5
changing sentence structure 147
expressing less certainty in hedging 128, 154
followed by infinitive without to 119
passive 85
second conditionals 155
in thesis statements 94
third conditionals 156
modifying adjectives and adverbs 20-1
more, comparative adjectives 17, 57
more or less, hedging expression 129
most, superlative adjectives 17
most people agree that 127
most surprising, superlative without the 19
much + comparative adjective + than 20
much + uncountable nouns 30
must 85, 102-3
N
namely, giving examples 68
nearly as + adjective 20
nearly the + superlative adjective 20
necessity, modal verbs 103-4
need 103-4

collocations 97

need not/needn’t + have + past participle 104

negative expressions in formal English 43

neither, emphatic inversion 77

neither + singular nouns 30

neither of + relative pronoun 49

ever, emphatic inversion 76-7

no + countable nouns 31

no sooner...than, emphatic inversion 76

nominalizations

from adjectives 39

from verbs 39

non-defining relative clauses 47

none, cohesion 175

none of + plural nouns 31

nor, emphatic inversion 77

not as + adjective/adverb + as 18

not nearly as + adjective 20

not only + inverted word order 67

not quite as + adjective 20

not since/until, emphatic inversion 76-7

note, reporting verb 143

notice, followed by infinitive without to 119

noun + and + noun 32

noun + noun 32, 169

noun + noun + noun 32

noun + noun clause 34

noun clauses, as post-modifying structures 28, 34

noun phrases 28

noun synonyms 145

nouns

+ prepositional phrases 33-4

cause and effect 112

emphasizing with itself/themselves 75

followed by particular prepositions 33-4

formal 42

as pre-modifying words 28

preceding noun clauses 34

O

object

phrasal verbs 133

verbs with or without an object 118

objection, collocations 96

obligation, modal verbs 102-3

observe, reporting verb 58

obviously, emphatic adverb 78

of

following particular nouns 33

following superlative adjectives 19

rise of 10% 57

of + which 48

of course, emphatic adverb 77

off, phrasal verb particle 133

offers, making 105

omitting words in essay writing 177

on

following particular nouns 34

following superlative adjectives 19

phrasal verb particle 133

on account of, cause and effect 111

on balance, hedging expression 129

on condition that, first conditional sentences 155

on the contrary, expressing contrast 23

on no account, emphatic inversion 77

on the other hand, expressing contrast 23

one

cohesion 175

referring to people in general 41

one of the + superlative adjective 20

only, limiting word 76

opinion giving

in speaking 59

using others' opinions 58, 95

in writing 58

order of information, using passives 83

other/another, cohesion 175

otherwise, first conditional sentences 155

ought to 102-5

out, phrasal verb particle 134

over, phrasal verb particle 134

owing to, expressing reasons 63, 111

owing to the fact that 65

own, state verb 7

P

paraphrasing 142-8

changing form of a word 146

changing sentence structure 147

conventional words or phrases 144

specialized words or phrases 144

participle clauses 51

participles

changing sentence structure 147

following superlative adjectives 19

in relative clauses 50-1

to connect ideas 67-8

particles, phrasal verbs 133-5

particularly, emphatic adverb 77

passives 82-7

can 101

could 102

ending an argument 97

gerunds 85

infinitives 85

link between effect and cause 109

might 102

must 103

ordering information 83

past continuous tense 8, 84

past infinitive 86
slang, avoidance of 41

slightly + comparative adjective + than 20

so as (not) to + infinitive 64

so (that) + clause 64

some, cohesion 175

some + countable/uncountable nouns 30

some of + relative pronoun 48

somewhat, formal word 43

so...that, expressing results 63, 110, 147

speaking

giving own opinion 59

SEE ALSO informal English

state, reporting verb 58, 143

state verbs 7, 8, 9

statistics 57

statistics, 95

collocations 55

stem from 109

stop, different meanings 117

studies show that, distancing from argument 127

subsequently, sequencing adverb 66

succeeded in + -ing form of verb 101

such (a/an) + noun, cohesion 175

such...that, expressing results 63, 110

suggest

hedging verb 125

reporting verb 58, 143

suggestions, making 105

summarizing

academics in present simple tense 7

arguments in essay 9

summary, giving a 69

superlative adjectives

describing peaks and troughs 57

followed by in/of/on 19

superlative adjectives and adverbs 17, 19

suppose/supposing, second conditionals 156

synonyms

advantage/disadvantage 96

cause 112

effect 112

for paraphrasing 144-5

T

tables 56

tend, hedging verb 125

tendency, hedging noun 125

tenses 6-11, 84, 104, 152-7

in sentences referring to the future 66

tentative and emphatic language 94, 95

tentative phrases, using would 104

term, defining language 161

than after comparative adjective/adverb 18, 20, 57, 147

that clauses beginning with 121

in defining relative clauses 47, 48

that clauses used in hedging 127

that is to say, introducing a definition 68

that is why, expressing results 63

that and those 174

the before superlative adjective 19

definite article 29, 161, 175

the + superlative adjective/adverb 19

the extent to which, start of relative clause 49

the harder...the better, linking behaviour 18

the same, cohesion 175

the same as, expressing similarity 21

the second fastest, expressing comparison 19

the way in which, start of relative clause 49

themselves, to emphasize a noun 75

there + be, impersonal phrase 40

there + modal verb, impersonal phrase 40

therefore, expressing results 63, 110

thesauruses 144

thesis statement 94

they, replacing he or she 173

think + future tense 11

think about/of 136

third conditionals 10, 156-7

this and these 173

with summarizing nouns 174

though, expressing contrast 65

three-part prepositional verbs 138

time

sequencing events 66

words and phrases 65-6

times a day, use of indefinite article 29

to following particular nouns 34

following similar 21

to + infinitive 64

to conclude, conclusion phrase 97

to some extent, hedging expression 129

to sum up, conclusion phrase 69, 97

to summarize, conclusion phrase 97

too + adjective + infinitive 18

towards, following particular nouns 34

transitive phrasal verbs 133-4

trends, recent/past 56-7

try, different meanings 117

twice as + adjective 20

U

ultimately, expressing effect 109

uncountable nouns, articles 29, 161

undeniably, emphatic adverb 78

under no circumstances, emphatic inversion 77

undoubtedly, emphatic adverb 78

unfailingly, emphatic adverb 77-8

unless, first conditional sentences 155
If you are studying in English at university level, whatever your chosen subject, this book will help you to:

• **Improve your use of key strategies** in academic writing and speaking such as comparing and contrasting, arguing and persuading, talking about cause and effect, and paraphrasing

• **Understand the key grammatical areas** you need for successful essay writing and presentations such as modal verbs, noun phrases, conditionals, and relative clauses

• **Put theory into practice** with exercises which test your knowledge and challenge your understanding, so you can incorporate new language actively in your writing and speaking

**Ideal for use with the Oxford EAP series**

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.oup.com/elt